



Fiery® ES IC-418

Configuration and Setup

© 2017 Electronics For Imaging, Inc. The information in this publication is covered under Legal Notices for this product.

27 October 2017

45174663



Contents

Introduction	5
Terminology, conventions, and documentation resources	5
General precautions for working with the Fiery ES	6
Fiery ES hardware	6
System requirements	7
Ethernet connection	7
Network requirements	7
Supported network protocols	7
Internet Protocol (IP) requirements	8
Client computer requirements	8
Installing and configuring printer drivers	8
Requirements for Windows client computers	9
Requirements for Mac client computers	9
System requirements for Command WorkStation and WebTools	10
Fiery JobMaster, Impose, and Compose requirements	11
Mobile device requirements	11
Setting up from the printer control panel	12
Access Setup	12
Fiery-related menus on the printer	12
Setup options on the printer control panel	14
Server Name	14
Login timeout	15
Ethernet Speed	15
Get IP Address Automatically	15
IP Address	15
Gateway Address	15
Subnet Mask	15
802.1x Setup	15
Obtain IP for Engine	16
Enable Private MIB	17
Enable Web Services	17

Integrating the Fiery ES into your network	18
Fiery ES hardware description	18
Front and back panels	18
Steps to integrate the Fiery ES into your network	19
Powering the Fiery ES on or off	20
Power on the Fiery ES	21
Restart, Reboot, or Shut Down the Fiery ES	21
Accessing the Fiery ES	23
Access Configure from Command WorkStation	23
WebTools	23
Access Configure from WebTools	24
Administration	25
Maintaining optimal Fiery ES performance	25
Back up and restore settings	26
Recommended back up actions	26
Back up requirements	27
Recommendations to protect data	27
Data that cannot be guaranteed	28
Backing up and restoring the Fiery ES system image	28
Backing up and restoring the Fiery ES configuration settings	31
Reset the configuration settings to factory defaults from the printer control panel	34
Clearing print jobs	34
Types of data that can be cleared	35
Software updates	35
Configure System Updates	35
Managing firewalls	36
User software	36
Troubleshooting	37
Perform basic troubleshooting	37
Collect troubleshooting information	38
Job error reports	38
Runtime error messages	39
Printer not found	39
Cannot connect to the Fiery ES with Command WorkStation	39

Introduction

This document describes tasks that must be completed or coordinated by the administrator of the Fiery® ES IC-418.

The procedures in this document require the following conditions:

- The Fiery ES is installed at the site and confirmed as operational by the service technician.
- The Fiery ES is connected to the network, a power source, and the printer.
- The printer is powered and operational.

Note: For information about how to configure the printer, see the documentation accompanying the printer.

Terminology, conventions, and documentation resources

This document uses the following terminology and conventions to refer to the Fiery® ES IC-418, printer, and supported operating systems.

Term or convention	Refers to
Aero	Fiery ES (in illustrations and examples)
Command WorkStation	Fiery Command WorkStation
Printer	MFP
Fiery ES	Fiery® ES IC-418
Mac OS	All supported Mac operating systems. For a complete list, see System Requirements in <i>Configuration and Setup</i> .
Windows	All supported Windows operating systems. For a complete list, see System Requirements in <i>Configuration and Setup</i> .
 Warning:	A warning concerning operations that may lead to death or injury to persons if not performed correctly. To use the equipment safely, always pay attention to these warnings.
 Caution:	A caution concerning operations that may lead to injury to persons if not performed correctly. To use the equipment safely, always pay attention to these cautions.
 Important:	Operational requirements and restrictions. Be sure to read these items carefully to operate the equipment correctly, and avoid damage to the equipment or property.

The following documentation resources are available for the Fiery® ES IC-418.

Resource	Description
User documentation	Documents in this set: <i>Color Printing, Configuration and Setup, Fiery Productivity Package, Printing, Utilities</i>
Online help	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Help can be accessed directly from each Fiery application or by going to help.efi.com. • Each help system is available as a printable PDF, accessed from the PDF icon in the upper right corner of the Help window.
Additional reference material	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Fiery Color Reference</i> - help.efi.com/ref/colorref/en-us/ • <i>Variable Data Printing</i> - help.efi.com/ref/vdp/en-us/ • <i>Workflow Examples</i> - help.efi.com/ref/workflows/en-us/ • <i>Configure Help</i> - help.efi.com/configure/3.0/en-us/

General precautions for working with the Fiery ES

Fiery ES hardware

Always observe the following precautions to assist with personnel safety and prevent data loss or equipment damage.

-  **Warning:** Do not store or use flammable sprays or solvents near the Fiery ES or the printer. Components within these machines can operate at a high enough temperature to provide an ignition source. Storing or using flammable items near these machines could cause the items to catch fire or explode.
-  **Warning:** Never set any liquid on or near the Fiery ES or the printer. Spilling liquids into either machine could result in electric shock and damage the machine. If liquid is spilled on or underneath either machine, or any object falls into either machine, disconnect the corresponding power cable immediately, if safe to do so.
-  **Warning:** Do not remove the covers or otherwise open the Fiery ES hardware. Cables and parts inside the chassis are intended to be serviced by technical support only.
-  **Warning:** Ensure that the power cabling remains as configured by the service technician. The designated power cable and a grounded, correctly rated outlet must be used. If required, the cable should be protected by a surge suppressor, line conditioner, or uninterruptible power supply (UPS).
-  **Warning:** Do not allow the power cords or cables to be compressed or bent at a sharp angle. Arrange them so that no one might accidentally step on or trip over them.
-  **Caution:** Do not block the vents on the Fiery ES or otherwise restrict airflow. Leave clearance around all vents and ensure that nothing falls into the vents.
-  **Caution:** Do not make mechanical modifications to the system. The safety and regulatory compliance of modified equipment cannot be guaranteed.

System requirements

We strongly recommend that you review all system requirements before you set up the Fiery ES.

Ethernet connection

For Ethernet connections, the Fiery ES supports Unshielded Twisted Pair (UTP) cabling for certain network speeds.

The following network speeds are supported:

- 10BaseT: Category 3 or later
- 100BaseTX: Category 5 or later (4-pair/8-wire, short-length)
- 1000BaseT: Category 5e or later (4-pair/8-wire, short-length)

Network requirements

When the Fiery ES is connected to a network, it behaves as a networked printer. Connecting to a live network allows the Fiery ES to query the network for zones, servers, and server-based queues.

Supported network protocols

The Fiery ES is compatible with multiple network protocols. Client computers that do not have any of the compatible protocols can send print jobs through a print server that has a supported protocol.

The Fiery ES can process concurrent protocols over the same connection. It automatically switches to the correct protocol and handles connections simultaneously.

The Fiery ES supports TCP/IP and UDP/IP (IPv4 or IPv6), including:

- Bonjour

Note: Bonjour allows the Fiery ES to act as a Bonjour printer when communicating with Mac computers.

- DHCP
- FTP
- HTTP
- IMAP
- IPP
- LDAP

- LPD
- LPR
- NetBios over TCP/IP (NBT)
- POP3
- Port 9100
- SMB
- SMTP
- SNMP
- SNTF
- SSL/TLS
- WSD

AppleTalk (supported for font downloads only)

Enabling this setting allows Mac client computers to use AppleTalk to download fonts to the Fiery ES.

Internet Protocol (IP) requirements

The Fiery ES requires the following:

- Unique IP address (IPv4 or IPv6)
- Subnet mask
- Gateway address

You can enter these items manually or use DHCP protocol to assign them dynamically. Make sure the Fiery ES name and address are listed in the domain name server (DNS) or host name database used by your system.

Client computer requirements

The Fiery ES utilities software, printer drivers, and online help are supported for Windows and Mac client computers.

Installing and configuring printer drivers

Before you can print from a client computer to the Fiery ES, you must first install a printer driver on each client computer and then configure them to include Fiery ES and printer installed options.

After you install and configure printer drivers, you can print from any application on a client computer to the Fiery ES.

For more information about installing printer drivers, including installing printer drivers on other operating systems, see *Printing*, which is part of the user documentation set.

Requirements for Windows client computers

The Fiery ES utilities and printer drivers support the standard Windows operating systems and system specifications.

Supported operating systems for Windows client computers

The Fiery ES utility applications and printer drivers are supported for the following Windows operating systems on client computers.

Note: Support for Windows versions is based upon the latest service pack. Both 32 and 64-bit versions are supported unless otherwise noted.

- Windows 8.1: Windows 8.1, Windows 8.1 Pro, Windows 8.1 Enterprise
- Windows 10: Windows 10 Home, Windows 10 Pro, Windows 10 Enterprise, Windows 10 Education, Windows 10 Mobile, Windows 10 Mobile Enterprise, Windows 10 IoT Core
- Windows Server 2008 R2 (64-bit only): Foundation, Standard, Enterprise, Datacenter, Web Server, Itanium-Based
- Windows Server 2012 (64-bit only): Foundation, Essentials, Standard, Datacenter
- Windows Server 2012 R2 (64-bit only): Foundation, Essentials, Standard, Datacenter
- Windows Server 2016: Windows Server 2016 Technical Preview

System requirements for Windows client computers

The following table lists the system specifications required to install and use Fiery ES utility applications and printer drivers on Windows client computers.

System requirement	Description
Processor	Pentium 4, 1.0 GHz or faster
Memory (except for Command WorkStation)	500MB (2GB recommended)
Hard disk space (except for Command WorkStation)	1GB (2GB recommended)

Requirements for Mac client computers

The Fiery ES utilities and printer drivers support the standard Mac operating systems and system specifications.

Supported operating systems for Mac client computers

The Fiery ES utility applications and printer drivers are supported for the following Mac operating systems.

Note: Support for Mac OS versions requires Intel-based Mac computers.

- Mac OS X v10.9
- Mac OS X v10.10
- Mac OS X v10.11
- Mac OS X v10.12

System requirements for Mac client computers

The following table lists the system specifications required to install and use Fiery ES utility applications and printer drivers on Mac client computers.

System requirement	Description
Processor	Intel processor that supports the version of Mac installed. For more information, go to apple.com .
Memory (except for Command WorkStation)	500MB (1GB recommended)
Hard disk space (except for Command WorkStation)	500MB (1GB recommended)

System requirements for Command WorkStation and WebTools

The following specifications are required to install and use Command WorkStation or WebTools on a client computer.

Note: The Fiery ES supports Command WorkStation and WebTools by default (no configuration is required).

Requirement	Descriptions
Internet browser versions supported for using WebTools and for viewing Configure within Command WorkStation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Windows: Internet Explorer 11 or later, Firefox 31.0 or later, Chrome 37.0 or later <p>In addition, Microsoft Edge is supported for client computers that are running Windows 10 (not supported for other versions of Windows)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mac OS: Safari 7 or later, Firefox 31.0 or later, Chrome 37.0 or later <p>Note: Microsoft releases frequent updates to Internet Explorer. Because support cannot be guaranteed for all versions, use the specified version for best results. On Mac OS, some versions of Firefox may not allow you to enter passwords into Configure. If this occurs, use Safari instead.</p>
Memory (required for Command WorkStation only)	1GB or more
Hard disk space (required for Command WorkStation only)	3GB

Requirement	Descriptions
Display	1024 x 768 screen resolution
Graphics card	16-bit color
Network protocol	TCP/IP
Other requirements	The IP address or DNS name of the Fiery ES must be provided to each user who requires access through WebTools.

Fiery JobMaster, Impose, and Compose requirements

To use Fiery JobMaster, Impose, and Compose, you must have the following on each client computer:

- Command WorkStation
- An activated license
- Acrobat/PitStop software

Mobile device requirements

Direct Mobile Printing is supported on the following mobile devices with iOS 4.2 or later and print functionality:

- iPad
- iPhone (4 or later)
- iPod touch (3rd generation or later)

Setting up from the printer control panel

Access Setup

You can use the Setup feature on the printer control panel to perform initial setup of the Fiery ES. You can also use the printer control panel to access menus for additional Fiery ES functions.

- 1 Make sure that the Fiery ES is not receiving, printing, or processing files.
- 2 On the printer control panel, press the Menu button.
- 3 Press the Fiery logo.
The Fiery ES interface displays.
- 4 If prompted, log on with Administrator privileges.
The default Administrator password is **Fiery.1** (case-sensitive).
- 5 On the Tools tab, press Setup.

Fiery-related menus on the printer

You can access many of the Fiery ES controls through the printer control panel.

For detailed information about the job management features, see *Utilities*.

Press Fiery on the printer control panel to access the Fiery ES tabs. Each tab typically includes the following items:

Logout (blue icon at top of window)	Press to log out. You can then log back in using a different account (administrator or operator).
Suspend printing (orange icon at top of window)	Press to suspend communication between the Fiery ES and the printer, such as for maintenance tasks. Pressing this button interrupts the current print job and stops additional jobs from printing, but allows jobs to continue to process on the Fiery ES. After being pressed, the button turns green to become the Resume printing button.
Resume printing (green icon at top of window)	Press to resume communication between the Fiery ES and the printer. After being pressed, the button turns orange to become the Suspend printing button.
Current tab name (blue button at bottom of window)	Press to return to the main screen.

Waiting Jobs, Held Jobs, and Printed Jobs tabs

You can use these tabs to view jobs that are either currently queued to print, on hold, or printing. To delete or print a job, you must log on as Administrator or Operator.

Secure Jobs tab

You can use this tab to view jobs sent to secure printing with the same code. For more information about using secure printing, see *Printing*.

USB Media Server tab

You can use this tab to print a file from a USB flash drive to one of the published print connections. For more information about printing from a flash drive, see *Printing*.

PrintMe tab

You can use this tab to submit print jobs using Document IDs (if you have a PrintMe subscription). PrintMe must first be enabled. For more information about using PrintMe, see *Printing*.

Print Pages tab

You can print the following items from this tab:

PS Test Page	Prints a test page to confirm that the Fiery ES is properly connected to the printer. Also provides postscript (PS) versions of color and grayscale samples, which can be used to troubleshoot problems with the printer or the Fiery ES. Settings on the PS Test Page may include: Server Name, color settings, printer model, and date and time the PS Test Page was printed.
PS Font List	Prints a list of all PS fonts currently on the Fiery ES hard disk drive.
PCL Test Page	Prints a test page to confirm that the Fiery ES is properly connected to the printer. Also provides printer command language (PCL) versions of color and grayscale samples, which can be used to troubleshoot problems with the printer or the Fiery ES. Settings on the Test Page may include: Server Name, color settings, printer model, and date and time the PCL Test Page was printed.
PCL Font List	Prints a list of all PCL fonts currently on the Fiery ES hard disk drive.
Configuration	Provides general information about the hardware and software configuration of the Fiery ES, the current Setup options, the current calibration, and the IP address of the Fiery ES.
Job Log	Prints a list of the last 55 jobs.
E-mail Log	Prints a list of recent e-mail activity (if e-mail is enabled on the Fiery ES).

Tools tab

You can use this tab to select the following operations:

Calibrate	Use to calibrate the Fiery ES using ColorCal. For more information, see <i>Color Printing</i> . If an Administrator password has been set, you must enter it.
------------------	---

Align Tray	Use to adjust the placement of text and images on a page so that they are correctly aligned on the sheet of paper, and to ensure that both sides of a duplex sheet have the exact same alignment. For more information about this function, see <i>Command WorkStation Help</i> .
Setup	Use to select settings for the Fiery ES, including network settings and the timeout period for the login to the printer control panel.
Restart Server	Use to reboot, restart, and shut down the Fiery ES .
Clear Server	Use to delete all jobs on the Fiery ES. User needs to confirm before proceeding.

Info tab

You can use this tab to view information about the Fiery ES:

Server Name	The name assigned to the Fiery ES.
IP Address	The Fiery ES IP address.
Memory	The memory allocated to the Fiery ES.
Hard Drive	The size of the Fiery ES hard drive and the available free space.
Version	The Fiery ES operating system version.
User	The type of user account in the current session.
Installed Options	The software options installed on the Fiery ES.

Setup options on the printer control panel

You can configure the network settings for the Fiery ES through the Tools > Setup feature on the printer control panel.

Before configuring the network information, confirm that the Fiery ES is connected to an active network. This allows the Fiery ES to query the network for zones, servers, and server-based queues. If you perform Network Setup without a connected and functioning network, default settings are used that might not be accurate for your network.

Configure options only for the network systems that are currently used at your site. If your network requirements change, you can change Setup at any time. If the Fiery ES is configured to enable more than one protocol, it automatically switches to the correct protocol when it receives a print job.

 **Important:** The submenus and options in this topic appear in sequence.

Server Name

Sets the name of the Fiery ES on the network (15 characters maximum).

Note: If you set up more than one Fiery ES, do not assign them the same name.

Login timeout

Specify when the Fiery ES times out after you log on.

When you finish making changes, save the changes. The Fiery ES requires a reboot in order for any Setup changes to take effect.

Ethernet Speed

Choose the appropriate speed of the network.

You can allow the Fiery ES to detect automatically the speed in any of these cases:

- The network speed is unknown.
- The network environment is mixed.
- The network uses 1 Gbps.

Get IP Address Automatically

Select to automatically obtain an IP address for the Fiery ES. Clearing this check box activates the fields for entering the IP Address, Gateway Address, and Subnet Mask.

IP Address

Enter the Fiery ES IP address for Ethernet.

This IP address, unlike an IP address set automatically, remains the same if you restart the Fiery ES. You must change the default to a valid address for your network.

Gateway Address

Set the gateway address for printing with TCP/IP on your network.

Subnet Mask

Set the subnet mask for printing with TCP/IP on your network.

Note: Before proceeding, confirm the subnet mask setting with your network administrator.

802.1x Setup

The Fiery ES can seek authentication from an 802.1x authentication server (such as a RADIUS server), often through an intermediate access point (an authenticator).

The Fiery ES seeks this authentication at startup, or when the Ethernet cable is disconnected and reconnected. If the Fiery ES is successfully authenticated, it is allowed access to the network.

Enable 802.1x Authentication

Select to allow the Fiery ES to seek authentication from an 802.1x authentication server.

Select EAP Type

Choose the type of EAP (Extensible Authentication Protocol).

Note: This option is only available when [Enable 802.1x Authentication](#) is selected.

Validate Server Certificate

Select this option if you set [Select EAP Type](#) to PEAP-MSCHAPv2 and want the Fiery ES to use a trusted root certificate when communicating with the authentication server. If you want the Fiery ES to validate the server certificate, place the certificate in the list of trusted certificates of the Fiery ES.

Note: This option is only available when [Enable 802.1x Authentication](#) on page 16 is selected.

Username

The Fiery ES uses this information to request authentication from an 802.1x authentication server.

Note: This option is only available when [Enable 802.1x Authentication](#) is selected.

Use ASCII code characters (63 characters maximum). It is possible to enter more, but the supported length is 63 characters maximum. Although you can enter characters other than ASCII code characters, only ASCII code characters are guaranteed for authentication.

Password

The Fiery ES uses this information to request authentication from an 802.1x authentication server.

Note: This option is only available when [Enable 802.1x Authentication](#) on page 16 is selected.

Use ASCII code characters (63 characters maximum). It is possible to enter more, but the supported length is 63 characters maximum. Although you can enter characters other than ASCII code characters, only ASCII code characters are guaranteed for authentication.

Obtain IP for Engine

Select to allow the Fiery ES to obtain an IP address for the printer.

- Select if the printer is connected to the network through the Fiery ES.
- Clear to allow the printer to obtain its own IP address, which is possible if the printer is connected directly to the network by a separate network cable.

Enable Private MIB

Select to enable the private MIB (Management Information Base) included with the Fiery ES.

Enable Web Services

Select to enable web services for the Fiery ES. This feature must be enabled to allow the following:

- Access to the Fiery ES functions through the printer control panel
- Access to WebTools from client computers
- The option to submit print jobs using IPP network protocols

 **Important:** We recommend leaving this option selected. If it is disabled, the above functions are not available.

Integrating the Fiery ES into your network

Your service technician ensures that the Fiery ES is correctly installed at your site, the power supply and cooling are adequate, and the required cables are connected.

Fiery ES hardware description

This section provides illustrations for the Fiery ES.

Front and back panels

Following are illustrations of the connector and LED panels.

Figure 1: Fiery ES front panel

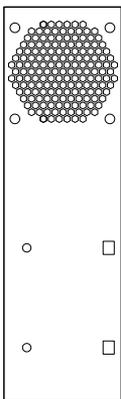
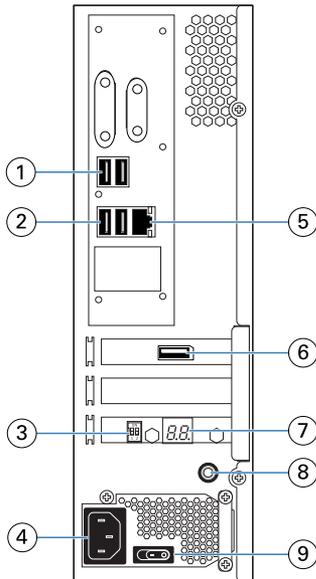


Figure 2: Fiery ES connector panel



- 1 Type A USB2.0 ports (x2)
- 2 Type A USB3.0 ports (x2)
- 3 Service switch
- 4 Power connector
- 5 Network port (10/100/1000 BaseT)
- 6 Printer interface port
- 7 LED display
- 8 Power button
- 9 Power switch

I: Power ON

O: Power OFF

Steps to integrate the Fiery ES into your network

This procedure provides an overview of the steps required to integrate the Fiery ES into your network and print environment.

Warning: Ensure all cables remain routed to prevent trip hazards and to prevent accidental disconnection or damage. Ensure that the cables are not compressed, pinched, or bent at a sharp angle. Damaged cables can result in electric shock to personnel, in addition to faulty operation of the equipment.

Caution: Use caution and correct ergonomic procedures if it is necessary to lift or move the Fiery ES or connected equipment.

 **Important:** If you are concerned about the possibility of information being extracted from the Fiery ES Ethernet port without authorization, consider securing the Ethernet port.

 **Important:** For the power connection to the Fiery ES, only use the power cable provided with the Fiery ES. Do not use a power cable intended for any other electronic device.

 **Important:** For the connection between the Fiery ES and the printer, only use the shielded Ethernet cable provided with the Fiery ES. Do not use an unshielded cable.

Note: As an option, you can configure a Windows computer to act as a print server between the Fiery ES and the client Windows computers. The client computers then print to the Fiery ES by printing to the print server, and you can monitor and control printing at the network server.

To configure a Windows print server, install the Fiery ES printer driver on the Windows server, then share the queues with network users. Make sure that the printer driver is updated as required. For information about configuring a Windows print server, see the Windows documentation.

- 1 Review the Fiery ES requirements information to ensure the client computer requirements and other requirements are met.
- 2 Confirm the Fiery ES network port (RJ-45 connector) is connected to a live network node.
- 3 Make sure all the Fiery ES cables are firmly seated.
- 4 Use the Fiery Setup Wizard to perform initial setup of the Fiery ES.

Note: If the settings are reset to factory defaults at any point, the server automatically reboots to identify the printer model. During this process, the Fiery logo on the printer control panel briefly disappears and reappears.

- 5 Plan the levels of user access and set up the required accounts.
- 6 Review the server and network settings and customize as required for compatibility with your network and printing environment.

Note: If the local workflow or network environment changes after the Fiery ES set up is complete, we recommend reviewing the Fiery ES configuration settings again.

- 7 Review the Fiery ES job processing and printing settings and customize as required.
- 8 Plan the management of software updates and system backups.
- 9 Prepare the client computers by installing the Fiery ES printer driver and the Fiery ES utilities (including Command WorkStation).
- 10 Print a variety of test pages to confirm that printing is working as expected.

Powering the Fiery ES on or off

Generally, you can leave the Fiery ES and the printer operating continuously. However, configuration changes may require a reboot of the Fiery ES.

You can restart the Fiery ES system software without rebooting the Fiery ES. During a restart, network access to the Fiery ES is temporarily interrupted and all processing jobs are terminated.

Note: If a bootable USB flash drive is inserted in the Fiery ES, remove it before rebooting. Non-bootable flash drives do not interfere with the boot process.

 **Important:** Before you restart, reboot, or shut down the Fiery ES, we recommend that you confirm the reason with your local network administrator or with technical support.

If the Fiery ES must be powered off for any reason, always shut it down correctly by following the shut down instructions provided in this document.

Protect the Fiery ES from power interruptions. Ensure that the power cable remains as configured by the service technician and that the cable is protected as required by a surge suppressor, line conditioner, or uninterruptible power supply (UPS).

Power on the Fiery ES

- 1 If the printer is off, press the main power switch on the printer to turn it on.
- 2 Make sure that the Fiery ES power cable is connected to power as it was configured by the service technician.
- 3 Make sure the Fiery ES power switch is in the ON (I) position.

Note: Depending on the market region, the power supply cover may be attached to the Fiery ES chassis, and the power switch may not be accessible. In this case, the power switch is in the ON (I) position by default.

- 4 Press the Fiery ES power button once.

The power supply automatically senses the correct voltage. Allow startup to proceed without interruption.

- 5 Wait for the Fiery ES to power on and reach Idle.

Restart, Reboot, or Shut Down the Fiery ES

You can restart the Fiery ES software, reboot the Fiery ES, or shut down the Fiery ES through the following methods:

- Command Workstation: Restart or reboot
- Printer control panel: Restart, reboot, or shut down

 **Important:** Avoid using the power button to shut down the Fiery ES, as doing so may cause the system to operate unpredictably. If you need to shut down the Fiery ES, we recommend shutting down through the printer control panel. Use the power button only if the printer is off or the system is unresponsive to keyboard or mouse actions. In this case, briefly press and release the power button.

Restart or reboot from Command WorkStation

- 1 Make sure that the Fiery ES is not receiving, processing, or printing any files.

If the system has just finished processing, wait at least five seconds after the system reaches Idle before you proceed.

2 In Command WorkStation, click the Server menu.

3 Select one of the following:

- Restart Fiery

Restarts the Fiery ES system software without rebooting the operating system on the Fiery ES.

- Reboot Server

Reboots the Fiery ES.

Shut down, restart, or reboot from the printer control panel

1 Make sure the Fiery ES is not receiving, processing, or printing any files. If the system has just finished processing, wait at least five seconds after the system reaches Idle before you proceed.

2 On the printer control panel, press the Menu button. Press the Fiery logo and then press Tools.

3 Press Restart Server.

4 If prompted, log on as Administrator or Operator.

The default password is **Fiery.1** (case-sensitive).

5 Select one of the following:

- Reboot Server

Completely restarts the Fiery ES, both the Fiery ES system software and the operating system software on the Fiery ES.

- Restart Server

Restarts the Fiery ES system software without rebooting the operating system software on the Fiery ES.

- Shut Down System

Completely shuts down the Fiery ES.

Accessing the Fiery ES

You can access the Fiery ES as follows:

- **Printer control panel:** Provides access to selected Fiery ES features.

You can also use Fiery ES utilities such as WebTools or Command WorkStation to view Fiery ES status and manage print jobs from a client computer. For more information, see *Utilities*.

Access Configure from Command WorkStation

- 1 From Command WorkStation, connect to the desired Fiery ES and log in as Administrator.
- 2 Do one of the following to start Configure:
 - In Device Center, on the General Info tab, click the Configure button.
 - In the Server menu, click Configure.
- 3 From Configure, change current Fiery ES setup options.

WebTools

WebTools consists of several utilities that allow you to manage your Fiery ES from the Internet or your company intranet.

From WebTools, you can access:

- **Home** provides current information about the jobs processing and printing on the Fiery ES. Home also allows you to download software updates, manage installed Fiery options, and check for product updates.
- **Docs** allows remote users to access jobs on the Fiery ES over the Internet or intranet.
- **Mailbox** allows remote users to access jobs on the printer over the Internet or intranet. You can also create, edit, and delete User Boxes on the printer.
- **Configure** allows the Fiery ES administrator to view and modify Setup options remotely from a Windows or Mac OS computer.
- **Fiery System Restore** allows you to back up the Fiery ES manually, schedule automatic backups, and restore the Fiery ES from a backup file.

Access Configure from WebTools

Use Configure to set up the Fiery ES. Setup is required the first time the Fiery ES is turned on or after system software is installed. You also use Configure to specify information about the network environment and printing preferences for jobs that users send to the Fiery ES.

- 1 Open an Internet browser and type the IP address of the Fiery ES.
- 2 In WebTools, click the Configure tab.

Note: If you receive a message about untrusted connections, you can ignore the message and proceed anyway.

- 3 Log on with Administrator privileges.

Administration

The Fiery ES includes many features to help you manage printing, performance, and security.

Maintaining optimal Fiery ES performance

The Fiery ES is designed to require no maintenance. In addition, the Fiery ES supports multiple methods for optimizing performance.

Reduce network traffic:

- **Only publish the print connections that are being used.**

The Fiery ES constantly checks all published connections, even if they are inactive. It is easy to re-establish connections if required.

The related settings can be found in [Configure > Job Submission](#).

- **Schedule less-urgent and recurring print jobs for low-traffic periods.**

Move jobs that are not urgent to the Hold queue. At low-traffic periods, a Fiery ES Administrator or Operator can move jobs between queues.

- **Reduce unnecessary network communication.**

Large numbers of users running Fiery ES utilities, especially with frequent updates, may impact Fiery ES performance.

Schedule Fiery ES software updates and non-critical network usage for low-traffic periods.

Manage print jobs for greatest efficiency:

- **Disable the ability to preview jobs while the jobs are processing.**

This setting can be found in [Configure > Job Management](#).

- **Allow print jobs to process while they are being received.**

This setting can be found in [Configure > Job Management](#).

Make sure there is adequate disk space on the Fiery ES:

- **Confirm that only essential files are stored on the Fiery ES.**
Do not store unnecessary files on the Fiery ES.
- **Reduce the number of jobs retained in the Printed queue.**
This setting can be found in Configure > Job Management > Printed Queue.
- **Remove inactive jobs from the queues.**
When you remove inactive jobs, new jobs are spooled and printed more quickly.
Periodically review the jobs in the Held queue and other queues.

Back up and restore settings

You can back up and restore selected settings or the entire Fiery ES configuration.

Recommended back up actions

 **Important:** We recommend creating a bootable system image on an external USB device. This allows recovery if the hard disk is not functional or has been replaced.

If it becomes necessary to restore the Fiery ES from a bootable image, contact your service technician.

If the hard disk is still functional, you can use Fiery System Restore to restore the system from a non-bootable image. You can also use Fiery System Restore to restore from a bootable image without booting from the image.

 **Important:** Restoring the Fiery ES system image reformats the hard disk and overwrites any customizations and data created since the system image was created.

All print jobs are lost when the system image is restored.

- 1 After the Fiery ES installation is complete, back up the Fiery ES factory image onto a bootable USB device.
This backup image is created from a factory image provided on the Fiery ES. You can use this image to revert the system to the factory image, such as if software updates cause issues.
- 2 After you install any software updates and customize the Fiery ES configuration settings, back up the customized Fiery ES system image onto a bootable USB device.

For details on what is included in the system image, see the back up and restore methods table in this chapter.

3 Schedule regular automated back ups of the Fiery ES customized image.

This ensures that a recent customized system image is always available. The image is written to the internal hard disk. Only one image can be saved on the internal hard disk. If a new image is created, it overwrites the previous scheduled image.

 **Important:** If you schedule automatic software updates in addition to automatic system back ups, we recommend that you schedule the system back ups a minimum of two hours before the software updates. This ensures a recent back up is available in case a software update causes any issues. Both automatic features check if an automatic service is already running before taking action. Fiery System Restore also checks to make sure the Fiery ES is idle before backing up the system.

4 Save your customized configuration settings as a separate file, as described later in this chapter.

This back up of the configuration settings as a separate file allows you to restore the configuration settings without restoring the entire system image.

5 Optional: If you want to capture recent changes before the next scheduled back up occurs, you can manually back up the Fiery ES customized image at any time. You can create this backup image as either a non-bootable image on the internal hard drive (which does not overwrite the scheduled backup image) or on a USB device, or as a bootable image on a USB device.

Back up requirements

Backups of the Fiery ES image require the following disk space:

- Factory default or customized Fiery ES image: 8 GB

Additional considerations for USB devices:

- For the fastest back up, use a USB 3.0 device in conjunction with the USB 3.0 port on the Fiery ES.
- USB flash drive: If you want to create a bootable image, the flash drive must be no larger than 32 GB.
 - Fiery System Restore: If the image is larger than 32 GB, Fiery System Restore displays a message that there is not enough space. In this case, we recommend backing up to a USB hard drive instead of a USB flash drive.
- USB hard drive: No size limit.

The estimated time needed for back up or restore is 25 minutes or more.

Recommendations to protect data

To protect your data, we recommend the following:

- Save a backup file of any important print job data in a separate location, such as on removable media.
- If the Fiery ES must be shut down for any reason, shut the system down correctly using the operating system commands. Do not force a shut down.
- Prevent interruption of power to the Fiery ES. Ensure that the power setup remains as configured by the service technician, and keep the necessary protection in place such as a surge suppressor, line conditioner, or uninterruptible power supply (UPS).

Data that cannot be guaranteed

If technical difficulties occur on the Fiery ES, we cannot assure storage of the following data:

- Print jobs
- Print job notes and instructions
- Scanned image data
- Jobs edited using Fiery Impose
- Variable data printing (VDP) job information
- Third-party fonts
- Color profiles, including profiles downloaded or edited using the Fiery ES Spot-On feature
- Fiery ES virtual printers
- Fiery ES configuration settings

Backing up and restoring the Fiery ES system image

The Fiery ES can be backed up and restored through Fiery System Restore, available through WebTools. Fiery System Restore includes a feature for scheduling automatic back ups.

You can create two types of system image: a factory default image and a customized image.

A factory default image has the following characteristics:

- Can only be saved as bootable image
- Includes the factory default versions of both the software and the configuration settings
- Can be restored to the same Fiery ES unit and to other Fiery ES units

A customized image has the following characteristics:

- Can be saved as bootable or non-bootable image (we recommend creating a bootable image to ensure the ability to efficiently restore the system in any circumstance)
- Includes any installed software updates plus the current state of the configuration settings
- Can only be restored to the same Fiery ES unit

Note: For details about what is included with each type of system image, refer to the back up and restore methods table in this chapter.

Back up and restore methods for the Fiery ES system image

If the hard disk is functioning, you can restore the Fiery ES from a non-bootable image. You can also restore the Fiery ES from a bootable image without booting from the image.

If the hard disk is not functioning, it must be restored from a bootable image by the service technician.

You can use the factory image to restore any Fiery ES unit. However, a customized image can only be used to restore the same Fiery ES unit used to create the image.

Note: The system image does not include VDP/FreeForm resources. To back up the FreeForm masters 1 and 2, save the configuration settings as described in this document.

Back up method	Description of backup image	Bootable option	Possible destinations	Restore method
Fiery System Restore in WebTools: Home Tab > Fiery System Restore > Create Backup (Fiery factory image)	Factory default image, manually backed up. Includes factory default version of software and configuration settings. Does not include print job information (print jobs, job logs, and job settings such as paper size).	Factory default image can only be saved as a bootable image, and requires a bootable USB device.	USB device only.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Can restore directly from image Fiery System Restore
Fiery System Restore in WebTools: Home Tab > Fiery System Restore > Create Backup (New image)	Customized image, manually backed up. Includes contents of C drive (except for items excluded by standard Windows back up process, such as items in recycle bin). Includes software updates and current configuration settings. Does not include print job information (print jobs, job logs, and job settings such as paper size).	Bootable option supported for USB devices only. Can also create a non-bootable image.	USB device or internal hard disk.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If bootable, can restore directly from image Fiery System Restore
Fiery System Restore in WebTools: Home Tab > Fiery System Restore (Schedule automatic backup)	Customized image, automatically backed up. Includes same content as manually-backed up customized image (described in previous row).	Non-bootable image only.	Internal hard drive.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Fiery System Restore

Back up and restore the system image with Fiery System Restore

With Fiery System Restore, you can back up the Fiery ES manually, schedule automatic backups, and restore the system from a backup file.

The Fiery System Restore backup file includes the operating system, the Fiery ES software, and the Fiery ES configuration settings. It does not include these items:

- Jobs, job logs, or job settings
- VDP/FreeForm resources

The backup file can be saved as a file or onto a bootable USB device.

Back up the Fiery ES system with Fiery System Restore

 **Important:** We recommend that you save the system backup to an external location. This ensures that the backup image is available even if the Fiery ES hard disk fails.

 **Important:** If you create the system backup as a bootable image, Fiery System Restore automatically prepares the USB device as a bootable drive. The destination device is reformatted and any existing data on the device is lost.

- 1 Connect a USB storage device to the Fiery ES.
For faster backup, we recommend connecting a USB 3.0 device to a USB 3.0 port on the Fiery ES.
- 2 Make sure that the USB device does not contain any data or software that you want to keep.
- 3 Enter the IP address of the Fiery ES into a browser.
- 4 Confirm the Fiery ES is in the Idle state.
- 5 On the Home tab in WebTools, select Create Backup under Fiery System Restore.
- 6 Select USB to specify the file location.
- 7 Select the options that you want and click Continue.
 - To create a bootable image with all the factory default versions of software and settings, select Fiery factory image. Fiery System Restore automatically creates the factory image as bootable (a non-bootable factory image cannot be created).
 - To create a bootable customized image, select New image, then select Create bootable image. This creates a bootable image that contains the current software updates and settings, including any customizations to the Fiery ES configuration.
 - To create a non-bootable customized image, select New image. This creates a non-bootable image that contains the current software updates and settings, including any customizations to the Fiery ES configuration.
- 8 Follow the on-screen prompts to complete the backup.

Schedule automated backups with Fiery System Restore

To minimize impact to Fiery ES performance, schedule the backups for a time when the Fiery ES is idle.

The automated backup files are saved to the local hard disk and can be accessed only through Fiery System Restore. Only one automatic backup file is retained (each new automatic backup overwrites the previous backup).

Note: Ensure that the Fiery ES remains powered up during the scheduled backup times, allowing enough time for the backup to complete.

- 1 Enter the IP address of the Fiery ES into a browser.
- 2 Confirm the Fiery ES is in the Idle state.
- 3 On the Home tab in WebTools, select Schedule Automatic Backup under Fiery System Restore.
- 4 Select Enable automatic backup.

- 5 Select the backup time.
- 6 Follow the on-screen prompts to complete the backup.

Restore the Fiery ES system using Fiery System Restore

-  **Important:** If the hard disk is not booting, the system must be restored from a bootable backup. If it becomes necessary to restore the Fiery ES from a bootable image, contact your service technician.
 -  **Important:** Before you restore the Fiery ES, we recommend that you contact technical support to confirm the necessity of restoring.
 -  **Important:** This procedure overwrites all data, customizations, and software updates implemented on the Fiery ES since the customized backup image was created. It also overwrites any backup image that is stored locally. If you restore from a factory default image, all data is lost.
 -  **Important:** A customized image can only be restored to the same Fiery ES unit from which it was created.
- 1 If applicable, attach the external hard drive or USB containing the image to the Fiery ES.
 - 2 On the Home tab in WebTools, select Restore under Fiery System Restore.
 - 3 Follow the on-screen prompts to complete the restore.
 - 4 Optional: After restoring the Fiery ES, run System Updates to ensure the latest Fiery ES software version is installed, or request the service technician to install the patches.
 - 5 Optional: If a backup of the configuration settings is available, restore the configuration settings as described in this document.

This can be useful if the configuration backup is more current than the system image backup (such as if you restored from factory default), or if the configuration backup included the job log and VDP/FreeForm resources.

Backing up and restoring the Fiery ES configuration settings

You can back up and restore the Fiery ES configuration settings as a separate file from the system image. You can restore the configuration settings file if you want to reapply the custom settings after reinstalling or upgrading system software.

The configuration settings backup file can be applied to any Fiery ES unit that has the same version of Fiery ES software installed (the client software utilities version does not matter). To determine the Fiery ES software version, view the configuration summary in Configure.

You can back up and restore the configuration settings through Configure or Command WorkStation, both of which provide the same options for which settings to back up. This document describes the Configure feature. For information about the Command WorkStation feature, see *Command WorkStation Help*.

Back up and restore methods for the configuration settings

Backup method	Factory default or customized settings	Possible destinations	Restore method
In Configure, click Fiery Server > Backup	Settings at time of backup.	Any standard file location, such as local or network folder, external hard disk, or USB device.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • In Configure, click Fiery Server > Restore • In Command WorkStation, click Server > Backup & Restore • In Command WorkStation, click Device Center > General > Tools > Backup & Restore
In Command WorkStation, click Server > Backup & Restore	Settings at time of backup.	Any standard file location, such as local or network folder, external hard disk, or USB device.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • In Configure, click Fiery Server > Restore • In Command WorkStation, click Server > Backup & Restore • In Command WorkStation, click Device Center > General > Tools > Backup & Restore
In Command WorkStation, click Device Center > General > Tools > Backup & Restore tab	Settings at time of backup	Any standard file location, such as local or network folder, external hard disk, or USB device.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • In Configure, click Fiery Server > Restore • In Command WorkStation, click Server > Backup & Restore • In Command WorkStation, click Device Center > General > Tools > Backup & Restore

Configuration settings not available for backup in Configure

You can back up most Fiery ES settings in Configure, but there are some exceptions.

- Fiery System Settings
 - Current date and time (but the date and time are indicated by timestamp on the configuration file)
- Color Settings
 - Added Calibration settings
 - Color Adjustment features in ImageViewer

Use the Export Color Adjust feature from the File menu in ImageViewer

These features can be backed up by additional methods:

- Job Log
 - In Configure, select Job Log to specify how the Job Log is automatically exported.

The following information is not saved with the configuration file:

- Saved jobs in Hold queue
 - To back up these jobs, archive the jobs from the Hold queue.
- Saved jobs in Printed queue
 - To back up these jobs, archive the jobs from the Printed queue.
- Job settings
 - To save these settings, create a Job Properties local preset and back it up to external media.
- Paper simulation
 - You can export this information from Command WorkStation, Device Center > Resources > Profiles.

Back up settings with Configure

When you back up settings, you can specify which settings you want to save.

- 1 In Configure, select Fiery Server > Backup.
- 2 Follow the on-screen instructions to select the settings.
- 3 Click Backup to back up the selected settings.

Restore settings with Configure

If you have backed up your settings, you can recover them in Configure after a system crash. You can only recover the settings that were selected for back up.

- 1 In Configure, select Fiery Server > Restore.

- 2 Select the backup reference file and the backup data file and click Next.
- 3 Follow the on-screen instructions to restore your settings and click Finish.

Reset the configuration settings to factory defaults from the printer control panel

 **Important:** If you reset the configuration settings to factory defaults, all the customized configuration settings on the Fiery ES are lost. Before you reset the Fiery ES to factory defaults, we recommend that you discuss the issue with technical support.

Note: You can reset the configuration settings to factory defaults from the printer control panel or in Configure through Fiery Server > Restore Default Fiery Settings. This procedure describes the printer control panel method (the Configure command is described in Configure Help). With either method, we recommend that you review all the configuration settings after the reset and customize as required for your print environment.

- 1 Print out the configuration page or otherwise record the customized configuration settings. This can be used as a reference if you want to reenter specific settings after returning the configuration to factory defaults.
- 2 Review the configuration settings and customize as required, then reboot to apply the changes.

Clearing print jobs

The Clear Server command allows you to clear all queued print jobs from the Fiery ES Print, Hold, and Printed queues. Jobs can also be deleted, individually or as a group, using Command WorkStation. Clear Server also clears all jobs archived on the Fiery ES hard disk drive, the index of archived jobs, and all FreeForm masters.

Back up your original data on your own media at the same time you store and save data on the Fiery ES hard disk drive. Never damage or reset the Fiery ES hard disk drive, and do not turn off the system while accessing the hard disk drive.

If the Fiery ES hard disk drive or system software experiences technical difficulties, data stored and saved on the Fiery ES hard disk drive may be irretrievably lost. If problems with the hard disk drive occur, extended storage of the following data cannot be assured:

- Third-party fonts
- Print jobs
- Color profiles, including profiles downloaded or edited using Spot-On
- Job notes and instructions
- Scanned image data
- Jobs edited using Impose
- Variable data documents
- Address books
- Fiery ES configuration information (list of all the settings currently in effect)

In Command WorkStation, click Clear Server from the Server menu.

For instructions on how to turn on and turn off the Fiery ES, see [Powering the Fiery ES on or off](#) on page 20.

Types of data that can be cleared

The following types of data can be cleared:

- Held jobs
- Active jobs
- Printed jobs
- Archived jobs that are stored on the server
- Archived network links to jobs
- Scan jobs
- VDP resources (including FreeForm)
- Job log
- FTP log
- Email log

Software updates

The Fiery ES includes multiple update options.

Configure System Updates

You can use the System Updates feature to schedule updates of the system software.

Plan system updates for when the Fiery ES is not in use, such as nights or weekends.

Note: Ensure that the Fiery ES remains powered up during the scheduled update times, allowing enough time for the update to complete.

 **Important:** If you schedule automatic software updates in addition to automatic system back ups, we recommend that you schedule the system back ups a minimum of two hours before the software updates. This ensures a recent back up is available in case a software update causes any issues. Both automatic features check if Fiery Service is already running before taking action.

While system updates are being installed, print jobs cannot be sent to the Fiery ES.

The Fiery ES automatically reboots during the system update process. It may need to reboot several times.

1 In Configure, log in with Administrator privileges, click Fiery Server > System Updates, and select Enable System Updates.

2 Specify how frequently the Fiery ES contacts the Update Server.

This feature sets a schedule for downloading updates.

Note: The system updates are performed only when there are no jobs in process. If the system updates might not occur due to extensive printer usage, increase the frequency of updates (such as daily instead of weekly).

3 If you use a proxy server to connect through a firewall to the Update Server, click the HTTP Proxy Settings link. In the Proxy dialog box, select Enable HTTP Proxy, enter the following information, and then click Save.

- Address: proxy server IP address
- Port: port used by the proxy server
- User Name: user name for accessing the proxy server
- Password: password for accessing the proxy server

4 Click Save.

Note: To confirm all outstanding updates are installed, check for product updates (for example, click Check for Product Updates on the Home icon in WebTools).

Managing firewalls

If your network includes a firewall, make sure that the network firewall is configured to enable communication between the Fiery ES and the client computers.

If the Fiery ES is behind a network firewall, configure a proxy server to allow the Fiery ES access to the internet for automatic updates.

To configure a proxy server, open Configure and select Network > Proxy, then select Enable HTTP Proxy and enter the required information about the proxy server.

User software

User software applications are first downloaded from the Update Server to a partition on the Fiery ES hard disk drive. Users access the Fiery ES over the Internet and download the applications onto client computers and then manually install them.

Troubleshooting

Startup diagnostics are described in the documentation for service technicians. Contact your authorized service/support center if you see startup error messages on Command WorkStation or if the Fiery ES does not reach the Idle state.

Perform basic troubleshooting

These troubleshooting steps can help to resolve the most common issues.

- 1 Confirm that all the cables required for the Fiery ES are intact and firmly seated in the correct ports.
The most common cause of an issue is a faulty or loose cable.
 **Warning:** Do not remove the covers or otherwise open the Fiery ES hardware. The parts inside the chassis and internal cables are intended to be serviced by authorized service technicians only.
- 2 If the Fiery ES cannot power on, confirm that the power cord is intact and adequate power is available at the power outlet.
- 3 If the Fiery ES is not visible on the network, confirm that the correct type of Ethernet cable is connected to the correct network port.
- 4 Confirm that the Fiery logo is showing on the printer control panel. If not, check the status of the Fiery ES and the cable connection to the printer.
- 5 Review any messages showing on the printer control panel.
- 6 If one or more client computers cannot print to the Fiery ES, confirm that the client computers have the correct version of the Fiery ES printer driver and utilities installed.
For information about installing the printer driver, see *Printing*. For information about installing the utilities, see *Utilities*.
- 7 If the Fiery ES is printing slowly or is not managing jobs as expected, review the Fiery ES configuration to confirm the settings are optimal for your network and print environment.
Any changes to your network environment or workflow may require changes to the Fiery ES configuration.
- 8 Confirm that the operating system settings on the Fiery ES are not modified and the operating system is not upgraded (unless approved by technical support).
Changes to the operating system settings or version can cause system problems.
- 9 Review any error messages showing in the Command WorkStation Servers list.
- 10 Take a screenshot of the Command WorkStation display and any error messages, then close and reopen Command WorkStation. If any error messages display when it restarts, contact technical support.

- 11 Reboot the Fiery ES. If the Fiery ES does not reach the Idle state or any other issues remain, collect the related information and contact technical support.

Collect troubleshooting information

Collecting the following information can help technical support provide efficient solutions.

- 1 Record or photograph the current status showing on the printer control panel.
- 2 If applicable, take a screenshot of the WebTools display.
- 3 If applicable, take a screenshot of the Command WorkStation display and any error messages.
- 4 Close and reopen Command WorkStation and take a screenshot of any error messages that display when it restarts.
- 5 Record any error codes displayed on the two-digit LED on the Fiery ES.
- 6 Make a list of the actions taken immediately prior to the issue and after the issue was discovered.
- 7 If the issue is relating to a specific job, create a job error report.

Job error reports

If errors occur when the Fiery ES is processing or printing jobs, you can submit a job error report to Technical Support.

The job error report captures important information for Technical Support to troubleshoot and resolve issues such as job errors, system failures, or unexpected print output. Job error reports collect job files, logs, and information about the Fiery ES.

When you create a job error report, Command WorkStation collects job files, logs, and information about the Fiery ES, and saves them to a zip file. Before sending the zip file to Technical Support, you can remove any files contained in the zip file for security purposes.

Note: Print jobs do not need to be in an error state for generating job error reports. You can create a job error report for any jobs in the Held or Printed queues.

- 1 In Command WorkStation, select a job in the Printed or Held list.
- 2 On Windows, press Ctrl and right-click the job. On Mac OS, press Command and right-click the job.
- 3 In the shortcut menu, click Create Error Report.
- 4 Enter information about the job error.
 - a) Enter comments and any additional details in the text field, such as steps for Technical Support to reproduce the error.
 - b) Optional: If desired, select Rasters to include in the report.
 - c) Optional: If desired, select E-mail log to include in the report.
 - d) Optional: Attach files to the report, such as a PS file.

- 5 Save the job error report to a specified folder.

Runtime error messages

Error messages related to canceling jobs and printing, including Disk Full messages and alerts about loading media, may display.

Printer not found

Most failures to find a printer on the network are due to a missing or conflicting name or IP address for the Fiery ES.

On the Fiery ES:

- Make sure that the host name (DNS name) is entered at Configure > Fiery Server > Server Name. For more information, see *Command WorkStation Help*.

On each Windows or Mac client computer:

- Ping the Fiery ES from the client computer, and perform standard troubleshooting of any connection issues.
- If standard troubleshooting does not resolve the issue, then you can specify the Fiery ES host name (DNS name) in the hosts file.

Note: Once you specify the host name on the client computer, it must be updated each time the name changes.

- To allow Command WorkStation and other Command WorkStation utilities on the client computer to connect to the Fiery ES, the Fiery ES IP address or DNS name must be configured in the server list. For more information, see *Utilities*.

Cannot connect to the Fiery ES with Command WorkStation

If a problem occurs while you are connecting to the Fiery ES, an error message is displayed.

The problem can occur when:

- The Fiery ES is initially turned on.
- The Fiery ES restarts.
- You have changed settings affecting the server address and have not reconfigured the connection to the server.

If you experience this problem, try the following solutions, in this order:

- A remote computer running utilities or WebTools may be interfering by obtaining status information. If possible, close the remote application, and try to connect again.
- Restart the Command WorkStation software and try to connect again.
- Restart the Fiery ES.



Fiery® ES IC-418

Fiery Productivity Package

© 2017 Electronics For Imaging, Inc. The information in this publication is covered under Legal Notices for this product.

27 October 2017

45174744



Contents

Introduction	5
Terminology, conventions, and documentation resources	5
Fiery Productivity Package	6
Feature activation	7
Check activation status	7
Update the status on your computer	8
Advanced job management features	9
Print Next	9
Process Next	9
Auto Trapping customization	10
Print a job with Auto Trapping	10
Customize Auto trapping	10
Control Bar	11
Print a job with a control bar	11
ImageViewer	13
Access ImageViewer	13
Access ImageViewer from Actions menu	13
Access ImageViewer from Preview	13
Monitor settings	14
Image Enhance Visual Editor	15
Access IEVE in Command WorkStation	15
IEVE and Apply image enhancement print option	15
Postflight	16
Postflight settings	16
Concise report	16
Test page	17
Color-coded pages	17
Postflight examples	17
Diagnose unexpected color	18

Check the calibration status of a job 18
Check the quality of an output profile 19
Diagnose color problem with a specific object 19

Introduction

This document explains the Fiery Productivity Package features and how they work.

The Fiery Productivity Package option for the Fiery® ES IC-418 offers additional color and production features for operators (or users with Operator or Administrator privileges) to monitor and manage the print workflow of jobs on the Fiery® ES IC-418.

Terminology, conventions, and documentation resources

This document uses the following terminology and conventions to refer to the Fiery® ES IC-418, printer, and supported operating systems.

Term or convention	Refers to
Aero	Fiery ES (in illustrations and examples)
Command WorkStation	Fiery Command WorkStation
Printer	MFP
Fiery ES	Fiery® ES IC-418
Mac OS	All supported Mac operating systems. For a complete list, see System Requirements in <i>Configuration and Setup</i> .
Windows	All supported Windows operating systems. For a complete list, see System Requirements in <i>Configuration and Setup</i> .
 Warning:	A warning concerning operations that may lead to death or injury to persons if not performed correctly. To use the equipment safely, always pay attention to these warnings.
 Caution:	A caution concerning operations that may lead to injury to persons if not performed correctly. To use the equipment safely, always pay attention to these cautions.
 Important:	Operational requirements and restrictions. Be sure to read these items carefully to operate the equipment correctly, and avoid damage to the equipment or property.

The following documentation resources are available for the Fiery® ES IC-418.

Resource	Description
User documentation	Documents in this set: <i>Color Printing, Configuration and Setup, Fiery Productivity Package, Printing, Utilities</i>

Resource	Description
Online help	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Help can be accessed directly from each Fiery application or by going to help.EFI.com. Each help system is available as a printable PDF, accessed from the PDF icon in the upper right corner of the Help window.
Additional reference material	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>Fiery Color Reference</i> - help.EFI.com/ref/colorref/en-us/ <i>Variable Data Printing</i> - help.EFI.com/ref/vdp/en-us/ <i>Workflow Examples</i> - help.EFI.com/ref/workflows/en-us/ <i>Configure Help</i> - help.EFI.com/configure/3.0/en-us/

Fiery Productivity Package

Fiery Productivity Package is installed with Command WorkStation and most Fiery Productivity Package features are accessible from Command WorkStation.

Production features

The production features include:

Feature	Where to set values or access
Fiery JDF	Command WorkStation
Fiery Hot Folders	Fiery Hot Folders (application)
Virtual Printers	Command WorkStation: Virtual Printers
Advanced job management features: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Print Next Process Next 	Command WorkStation: Job Center
Fiery JobFlow Base	Fiery JobFlow (application)

For information about Hot Folders, see *Hot Folders Help*.

For information about Fiery JobFlow Base, see *Utilities*.

Color and graphic arts features

The color and graphic arts features include:

Feature	Where to set values or access	Print option name
Auto trapping (with customization and rich black)	Command WorkStation: Device Center: Color Setup: Trapping	Auto trapping
Control bar	Command WorkStation: Device Center: Color Setup: Control Bar	Control bar
Hot Folders file filters	Hot Folders	none
ImageViewer	Command WorkStation: Job Center: ImageViewer	none
Image Enhance Visual Editor	Command WorkStation: Job Center: Image Enhance Visual Editor	none
Postflight	none	Postflight
Spot-On (spot color manager)	Command WorkStation: Device Center: Resources: Spot Colors	none

For information about Hot Folders file filters, see *Hot Folders Help*.

For information about Spot-On, see *Color Printing*.

Feature activation

The Fiery Productivity Package option must be activated at the Fiery ES before you can access its features from your computer. An administrator activates the option at your site using the software licensing feature in Command WorkStation or in WebTools.

Check activation status

- To check if an optional feature is activated at the Fiery ES, do one of the following:
 - Print the Configuration page (see *Configuration and Setup*).
 - In Command WorkStation Device Center, check the General Info tab.
 - In Command WorkStation Device Center, go to the Server Configuration tab and check the list of installed options in the BIOS Setup section under RIP.

Update the status on your computer

If an optional feature is activated at the Fiery ES, you must update the status of the option on your computer before you can access the feature from your computer.

Update the status on Windows

Before updating the status on a Windows computer, you must install the printer driver. For information about installing the printer driver, see *Printing*.

- 1 Open the Printers (or Printers and Faxes or Devices and Printers) window.
- 2 Right-click the Fiery ES and select Properties (or Printer Properties).
- 3 Click the Installable Options (or Configuration, or Accessories) tab.
- 4 Select Two-Way Communication.
- 5 Type the IP address or DNS name and click Update.
- 6 Verify that the feature appears under Installed Options, and click OK.

Update the status on Mac OS

Before updating the status on a computer running Mac OS, install the printer driver. For information about installing the printer driver, see *Printing*.

- 1 Select Apple menu > System Preferences, and then select Print & Scan, or Printers & Scanners.
- 2 In the Printer List, select the Fiery ES and click Options & Supplies.
- 3 Click the Driver tab or the Options tab.
- 4 Select the option from the appropriate list.
- 5 Click OK to apply changes.
- 6 Quit System Preferences.

Advanced job management features

The following sections describe how to access and use some of the advanced job management features.

Print Next

The Print Next feature moves the selected job immediately to the printing queue. If another job is currently printing, the selected job for Print Next is printed immediately after.

Note: The Print Next feature is valid for jobs that have spooled to the Fiery ES, but have not yet been sent to the printer. If you want a job that has already been sent to the printer to print next, you must specify that job from the printer control panel. For more information, see the documentation that accompanies your printer.

Process Next

The Process Next feature moves the selected job immediately to the processing queue. If another job is currently processing, the selected job for Process Next is processed immediately after.

The feature is accessed from the Actions menu in Command WorkStation and is described in *Command WorkStation Help*.

Auto Trapping customization

Trapping is a technique where some objects are printed slightly larger or smaller than you have specified in an application, in order to prevent white edges around the objects. These white edges, or "halos," can be caused by factors such as misregistration, the physical properties of the ink or toner, and the stiffness of the media.

The Auto Trapping customization feature provides you with advanced trapping settings and gives you full control over their values. The Fiery ES is shipped with values that are optimized for the printer using regular paper, but if these values do not provide the results necessary for the media that you use, modify the values to meet your requirements.

Print a job with Auto Trapping

- 1 In your application, select File > Print, select the Fiery ES as your printer, and then go to the print options in the printer properties.

For information about how to set print options and print to the Fiery ES from Windows and Mac OS applications, see *Printing*.

Alternatively, submit the job to the Fiery ES Hold queue and then set print options in Job Properties in Command WorkStation.

- 2 On the Color tab, turn on the Auto trapping print option.
- 3 Click OK and print the job.

If you have not customized the trapping values with Command WorkStation, your job is printed with the default trapping values. If you edited the values, your job is printed with the custom trapping values.

Customize Auto trapping

In Command WorkStation, the Auto trapping customization feature is on the Trapping tab under Color Setup in Device Center. For more information about using Trapping, see *Command WorkStation Help*.

Control Bar

Control Bar allows you to add a static color bar and dynamic job information to each printed page at a user-defined location.

- The job information includes the print settings that were used to generate the page.
- The color bar is typically a series of color patches designed for process control. An instrument, such as a spectrophotometer, and special software such as EFI Color Verifier are required to measure and interpret the color bar readings.

The Control Bar feature can apply a control bar to any job. It does not require the document designer to insert any information and it does not require special commands other than the Control Bar print option.

Note: If a control bar does not fit on the page, it will be clipped.

Note: If a background color is defined as "white" for a user-defined control bar, it must be defined in the CMYK color space. Setting CMYK rendering intent to Absolute Colorimetric simulates the white of the paper using CMYK values.

Print a job with a control bar

If you want to print a job from an application and specify a user-defined control bar, Two-Way Communication must be enabled in the printer driver. Otherwise, only the factory-supplied control bar is available.

- 1 In your application, select File > Print, select the Fiery ES as your printer, and then go to the print options in the printer properties.

For information about how to set print options and print to the Fiery ES from Windows and Mac OS applications, see *Printing*.

Alternatively, submit the job to the Fiery ES Hold queue and then set print options in Job Properties in Command WorkStation.

- 2 On the Job Info tab, under Reporting, select a setting for the Control Bar print option.

Fiery is the factory-supplied control bar that prints the Ugra/Fogra Media Wedge by default.

- 3 Click OK and print the job.



Callout Refers to

- 1 Static color bar
- 2 Job information

ImageViewer

ImageViewer allows you to adjust colors in a job before it is printed. You can also use the preview in ImageViewer to verify job placement, orientation, and content, as well as general color accuracy.

You can choose to display the plate data for each process color independently or in combination with the other colors, allowing inspection of individual plate data or a combination of any range of plates.

You can inspect the color values at specific places on a page, allowing you to soft proof the color output.

If the job contains halftone simulation settings, the preview shows a composite view of all separations at the dot level.

For information about using ImageViewer, see *Command WorkStation Help*.

Access ImageViewer

Start ImageViewer from the Actions menu or Preview window of Command WorkStation.

Access ImageViewer from Actions menu

1 In Job Center in Command WorkStation, select the job that you want to preview.

Note: ImageViewer recognizes only jobs that show processed/held (dark yellow) status. Processed/held jobs are also indicated by the raster job icon (page with blue arrow).

2 If needed, select Actions > Process and Hold to move the job to processed/held status.

3 To start ImageViewer, do one of the following:

- Select Actions > ImageViewer.
- Right-click the selected job and select ImageViewer from the menu that appears.

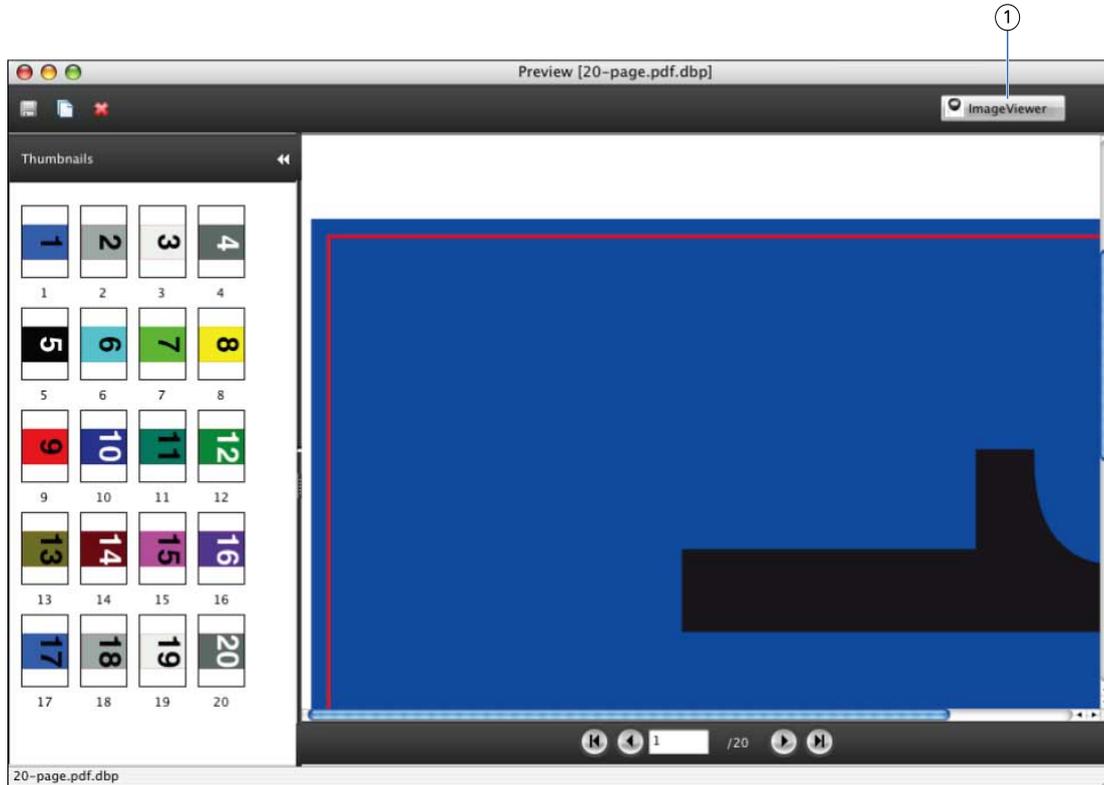
Access ImageViewer from Preview

1 In Job Center in Command WorkStation, select the job that you want to preview.

Note: ImageViewer recognizes only jobs that show processed/held (dark yellow) status.

2 If needed, select Actions > Process and Hold to move the job to processed/held status.

- 3 Select Actions > Preview or right-click the job and select Preview.
- 4 To start ImageViewer, select the thumbnail of the page that you want to soft proof, and then click the ImageViewer button.



Callout Refers to

- 1 *ImageViewer button*

Monitor settings

This feature requires that a job be displayed with correct colors on your monitor. To display the colors correctly on your monitor, you must set up the monitor according to the manufacturer’s recommendations, and specify the correct monitor profile for your monitor.

Specify the following settings for the monitor:

- On the monitor: Brightness, Contrast, and Color Temperature
- In the operating system: Resolution, Refresh rate, and Number of colors

For more information about setting up the monitor and the monitor profile, see the documentation that accompanies the monitor.

Image Enhance Visual Editor

Image Enhance Visual Editor (IEVE) is an image editing application that provides users with a visual workspace to adjust individual images in a job. With IEVE, you can see the effects of your adjustments and fine-tune the appearance of an image.

With IEVE, you can adjust tone, color, and sharpness, and perform red-eye correction. You can apply the same adjustments to all images on a page or a range of pages. When you save a set of adjustments as a preset, you can easily apply the same adjustments in the future.

Adjustments made in IEVE affect the job on the server and cannot be applied to the original source document.

IEVE is accessible from Command WorkStation. For more information about IEVE, see *Fiery Command WorkStation Help*.

Access IEVE in Command WorkStation

1 In Job Center in Command WorkStation, select the job containing the images that you want to adjust.

Note: IEVE supports PDF, PostScript, and imposed (.dbp) jobs only.

2 To start IEVE, do one of the following:

- Select Actions > Image Enhance Visual Editor.
- Right-click the selected job and select Image Enhance Visual Editor from the menu that appears.

IEVE and Apply image enhancement print option

IEVE adjustments are independent of the configurable Apply image enhancement print option. If the Apply image enhancement print option is turned on for a job that is also modified with IEVE, the effects of both are applied to the images in the job. We recommend that you use one or the other, not both, for a job.

- The Apply image enhancement print option is a faster way to apply simple adjustments that do not require visual confirmation before printing.
- IEVE is faster for making selective adjustments that require fine-tuning and visual inspection.

Postflight

The Postflight feature helps you determine why some printed jobs do not deliver expected color output. Both a diagnostic and a training tool, it provides helpful global and object-specific information about how a job is received and processed by the Fiery ES.

Postflight identifies not only those color spaces that are used by visible objects, but any color space used by a job. Use Postflight to troubleshoot color problems with a previously printed job or as a preventive measure.

- You can print the original document with all objects (images, graphics, and text) color-coded.
- A report explains what color spaces are used in the job and what print options affect those spaces. The report also provides information about the printing environment.
- You can print a Test Page to verify the condition of the printing environment.

You cannot use the Postflight print option for a job that uses Substitute Colors or Combine Separations.

Postflight settings

The Postflight print option can be set to print analytical reports for a job.

- Concise report
- Test page
- Color-coded pages
- All components

The Postflight print option is located in the Job Info tab of Job Properties or the printer driver.

Concise report

The concise report includes job information, global color management settings (such as output profile), object-specific settings according to the object's color space, and spot color information for all spot colors in the job.

The report is printed on the Fiery ES default paper size with the default calibrated color mode.

For mixed media jobs, which can use multiple output profiles, Postflight produces reliable results if the pages are printed on the same media with the same settings.

Test page

The Test page is printed with the same media and global settings as your job. However, color objects on this page are printed independently of the user-specified source color definitions (such as CMYK and RGB source profiles).

If the color on the Test page is not correct, it is probably because of the output profile, calibration, or printer.

If the color on this page prints correctly, but the colors of objects in the job do not, it is likely because of a problem with the objects themselves that cause them to be printed incorrectly. The problem might be the wrong color values for text and graphics, bad quality images, or out-of-gamut colors.

Color-coded pages

Postflight can print a color-coded version of the original document that prints each object in a color that identifies its source color space.

The colors used to represent the color spaces for objects are as follows:

- Gray objects: Gray
- CMYK objects: Cyan
- RGB objects: Red
- Device-independent objects: Indigo
- Spot color objects: Yellow

After identifying the color spaces of the objects that are printing incorrectly, you can make appropriate changes to the settings that affect those color spaces to correct the problem.

Postflight examples

Scenarios show how Postflight can be helpful to users who require high-quality color.

- Diagnose an unexpected color
- Check the calibration status of a job
- Check the quality of an output profile
- Diagnose a color problem with a specific object

For each of the scenarios, instead of printing the report to the Fiery ES, you can send it to the Hold queue of the Fiery ES and preview the information (of a job with raster data) in ImageViewer.

Note: The procedures for printing a job from a Windows and a Mac OS computer are similar.

Diagnose unexpected color

If you print a job that results in an unexpected color, use Postflight to diagnose the problem.

- 1 In your application, select File > Print, select the Fiery ES as your printer, and then go to the print options in the printer properties.

For information about how to set print options and print to the Fiery ES from Windows and Mac OS applications, see *Printing*.

Alternatively, submit the job to the Fiery ES Hold queue and then set print options in Job Properties in Command WorkStation.

- 2 On the Job Info tab, under Reporting, set Postflight to All Components.

- 3 Click OK and print the job.

The Test page, Color-coded pages, and report are printed.

- 4 Review all Postflight pages.

- 5 Make appropriate changes based on all Postflight pages.

Depending on your printing environment, the condition of the printer, and the color settings, possible changes are as follows:

- Correct problems with the printer (see the documentation that accompanies the printer).
- Calibrate the Fiery ES.
- Edit the colors of the output profile with Command WorkStation.
- Change the default settings in Command WorkStation.
- Change the job specific print option settings with Command WorkStation Job Properties.

- 6 Reprint the job, setting Postflight to Off.

- 7 Repeat these steps until the color results are acceptable.

Check the calibration status of a job

Use Postflight to check the calibration status of a job before printing the job.

- 1 In your application, select File > Print, select the Fiery ES as your printer, and then go to the print options in the printer properties.

- 2 On the Job Info tab, under Reporting, set Postflight to Concise Report.

- 3 Click OK and print the job.

The concise report is printed.

- 4 Review the information in the ColorWise global settings page.

- 5 Perform calibration, if needed.

If service has been performed on the printer since the last calibration, or calibration has not been performed, perform calibration using the calibration set specified in the Postflight report.

- 6 Reprint the job, setting Postflight to Off.

Check the quality of an output profile

Use Postflight to check the quality of an output profile on the Fiery ES.

- 1 In your application, select File > Print, select the Fiery ES as your printer, and then go to the print options in the printer properties.

- 2 On the Job Info tab, under Reporting, set Postflight to Test Page.

- 3 Click OK and print the job.

The Test page is printed.

- 4 Review the quality of the color on the Test page.

Note: Make sure that this page was printed with the same media and print option settings as the job.

- 5 Review the instructions on the Postflight Test Page.

- 6 Edit the color of the output profile, or create a profile, if needed.

It may be necessary to customize the output profile or create a new profile to get optimal results on the media the job is using.

- 7 Reprint the job, setting Postflight to Off.

Diagnose color problem with a specific object

Use Postflight to diagnose a color problem with a specific object.

- 1 In your application, select File > Print, select the Fiery ES as your printer, and then go to the print options in the printer properties.

- 2 On the Job Info tab, under Reporting, set Postflight to Color-Coded Pages.

- 3 Click OK and print the job.

The color-coded pages are printed.

- 4 Review the Postflight color-coded pages.

- 5 Make changes to the color settings, if needed.

Note: Use the Color-Coded Pages setting to send a job to another printer that has a specific color-space requirement. For example, a document targeted to a CMYK-only printer must have only Cyan-colored objects.

- 6 Reprint the job, setting Postflight to Off.



Fiery® ES IC-418

Printing

© 2017 Electronics For Imaging, Inc. The information in this publication is covered under Legal Notices for this product.

27 October 2017

45174678



Contents

- Introduction 7
- Terminology, conventions, and documentation resources 7
- User software for printing 8

- Windows for Fiery ES 9**
 - Installing Windows printer drivers 9
 - Installing printer drivers with Point and Print 9
 - Download printer drivers with WebTools 11
 - Install and complete the print connection for Windows 12
 - Install and connect to a virtual printer 13
 - Uninstall printer drivers from Windows client computers 16
 - Setting up Windows computers for printing 17
 - Setting up printing connections on Windows client computers 17
 - Set up Standard TCP/IP Port (Raw or LPR) printing connections on Windows client computers 18
 - Complete IPP connections on Windows client computers 22
 - Configure installable options on Windows client computers 23
 - Printing from Windows client computers 24
 - Print jobs from Windows applications 25
 - Specify default print options for print jobs on Windows client computers 27
 - Customize the Quick Access icon in the Windows printer driver 27
 - Fiery Driver Updater 28
 - View the printer status 28
 - Saving files to print at a remote location 28

- Mac OS for Fiery ES 29**
 - Installing printer driver on a Mac OS computer 29
 - Install the Mac OS printer driver 29
 - Download printer drivers with WebTools 30
 - Uninstall printer driver from a Mac OS computer 30
 - Set up Mac OS computers for printing 31
 - Set up the Fiery ES from the Print dialog box on a macOS Sierra 10.12 31
 - Set up printing on a macOS Sierra 10.12 client computer 32
 - Set up the Fiery ES with Printers & Scanners on a macOS Sierra 10.12 client computer 32
 - Add a printer with the Default connection on a macOS Sierra 10.12 client computer 33

Add a printer with the IP Printer connection on a macOS Sierra 10.12 client computer	34
Set up printing on a Mac OS X v10.11 client computer	35
Set up the Fiery ES from the Print dialog box on a Mac OS X v10.11 client computer	35
Set up the Fiery ES with Printers & Scanners on a Mac OS X v10.11 client computer	35
Add a printer with the Default connection on a Mac OS X v10.11 client computer	36
Add a printer with the IP Printer connection on a Mac OS X v10.11 client computer	38
Set up printing on a Mac OS X v10.10 client computer	39
Set up the Fiery ES from the Print dialog box on a Mac OS X v10.10 client computer	39
Set up the Fiery ES with Printers & Scanners on a Mac OS X v10.10 client computer	39
Add a printer with the Default connection on a Mac OS X v10.10 client computer	40
Add a printer with the IP Printer connection on a Mac OS X v10.10 client computer	41
Set up printing on a Mac OS X v10.9 client computer	42
Set up the Fiery ES from the Print dialog box on a Mac OS X v10.9 client computer	42
Set up the Fiery ES with Printers & Scanners on a Mac OS X v10.9 client computer	42
Add a printer with the Default connection on a Mac OS X v10.9 client computer	43
Add a printer with the IP Printer connection on a Mac OS X v10.9 client computer	45
Configuring installable options on Mac OS client computers	46
Using Desktop Printer	46
Printing from Mac OS client computers	46
Select the Fiery ES as the default printer on a Mac OS client computer	46
View queries in the Print Queue on client computers	47
Set print options and printing from Mac OS applications	47
Customize the Quick Access pane in the Mac OS printer driver	49
View the printer status	50
Other Printing Methods	51
E-mail Service	51
Printing using an email client	51
Print an email attachment with an email client	52
Manage print jobs with email commands	53
Printing from a USB flash drive	53
Print files automatically from a USB flash drive	54
Print files manually from a USB flash drive	54
Print and retrieve a secure print job	55
Send a secure print job	55
Print a secure print job from the printer	56
FTP printing	56
Print files to the Fiery ES with the FTP protocol	57

Direct Mobile Printing	57
Print from a mobile device	57
PrintMe cloud printing	57
Print a PrintMe document from a printer	58
Install the PrintMe printer driver	59
Install the PrintMe printer driver on a Windows client	59
Print documents from Windows applications	59
Print with Fiery JDF	60
Web Services for Devices printing	61
Install the WSD printer driver	61
Print Options	62
About the Fiery ES printer driver	62
Set print options for the job	62
Job Info options	63
Media options	68
Layout options	70
Color options	77
Image options	84
Finishing options	86
Variable Data Printing (VDP) options	87
Stamping (Watermark) options	89
Override print option settings in Job Properties	92
Booklet Maker layouts in the printer driver and Command WorkStation Job Properties	93
Booklet Maker in the printer driver and Command WorkStation Job Properties	94
About Booklet Maker imposition	95
Booklet Maker and Impose	95
Create a booklet with the booklet options in the printer driver or Job Properties	96
Create a booklet with the Booklet Maker wizard	96
Adding a cover to a Saddle booklet	96
Booklet Maker cover options for Saddle booklets	97
Printing Booklet Maker jobs	98
Set measurement units in Command WorkStation	98
Defining and printing custom page sizes	98
Document size and Paper size	99
Fold options	101
Gang-up printing	101
Image Enhance	102

Print Duplex (double-sided) pages103
Punch position and hole punching 103
User Authentication 104

Introduction

Printing describes how to install the printer drivers on Windows and Mac OS computers for the Fiery® ES IC-418.

This document covers the following topics:

- Installing printer drivers on Windows computers
- Setting up the printing connections on Windows computers
- Printing from Windows computers
- Installing printer drivers on Mac OS computers
- Setting up Mac OS computers for printing
- Printing from Mac OS computers
- Fiery® ES IC-418 print options
- Using printing methods other than the printer driver to print to the Fiery® ES IC-418

For information about setting up network servers and client computers to use the Fiery® ES IC-418, see *Configuration and Setup*. For general information about using the printer, your computer, application software, or network, see the documentation that accompanies those products.

For information about supported operating systems and system requirements, see *Configuration and Setup*.

Terminology, conventions, and documentation resources

This document uses the following terminology and conventions to refer to the Fiery® ES IC-418, printer, and supported operating systems.

Term or convention	Refers to
Aero	Fiery ES (in illustrations and examples)
Command WorkStation	Fiery Command WorkStation
Printer	MFP
Fiery ES	Fiery® ES IC-418
Mac OS	All supported Mac operating systems. For a complete list, see System Requirements in <i>Configuration and Setup</i> .
Windows	All supported Windows operating systems. For a complete list, see System Requirements in <i>Configuration and Setup</i> .

Term or convention	Refers to
 Warning:	A warning concerning operations that may lead to death or injury to persons if not performed correctly. To use the equipment safely, always pay attention to these warnings.
 Caution:	A caution concerning operations that may lead to injury to persons if not performed correctly. To use the equipment safely, always pay attention to these cautions.
 Important:	Operational requirements and restrictions. Be sure to read these items carefully to operate the equipment correctly, and avoid damage to the equipment or property.

The following documentation resources are available for the Fiery® ES IC-418.

Resource	Description
User documentation	Documents in this set: <i>Color Printing, Configuration and Setup, Fiery Productivity Package, Printing, Utilities</i>
Online help	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Help can be accessed directly from each Fiery application or by going to help.efi.com. Each help system is available as a printable PDF, accessed from the PDF icon in the upper right corner of the Help window.
Additional reference material	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>Fiery Color Reference</i> - help.efi.com/ref/colorref/en-us/ <i>Variable Data Printing</i> - help.efi.com/ref/vdp/en-us/ <i>Workflow Examples</i> - help.efi.com/ref/workflows/en-us/ <i>Configure Help</i> - help.efi.com/configure/3.0/en-us/

User software for printing

You need to install user software to set up basic printing on the Fiery ES.

Other documents may describe user software that can be used to print documents.

User software	Description
Printer drivers (for Windows and Mac OS)	Provides information about the Fiery ES and your particular printer model to your application and printer driver.
Printer Delete Utility (for Windows)	Uninstalls the Windows printer driver and associated printer driver files. (See Uninstall printer drivers from Windows client computers on page 16.)
Fiery Software Uninstaller Utility (for Mac OS)	Uninstalls the Mac OS printer and associated printer driver files. (See Uninstall printer driver from a Mac OS computer on page 30.)

Windows for Fiery ES

The Fiery ES can be set up as a printer on a Windows computer by installing the printer driver that corresponds to your printer and setting up the Fiery ES for printing.

Printer drivers provide a way to communicate information about print jobs between your applications, the Fiery ES, and the printer.

Installing Windows printer drivers

Installing the printer driver is the first step to set up the Fiery ES as a printer.

The User Account Control (UAC) feature is available on computers with the Windows operating systems supported by the Fiery ES. You must be the administrator or a user with Administrator privileges to install printer drivers. For information about supported operating systems, see *Configuration and Setup*.

Note: If the Fiery ES printer driver is already installed, you must uninstall it before you install a new driver. (See [Uninstall printer drivers from Windows client computers](#) on page 16.)

Installing printer drivers with Point and Print

SMB printing (also known as Windows or WINS printing) allows you to install PostScript printer drivers on your computer from the Fiery ES with Point and Print.

You can then print to a particular connection (Print queue, Hold queue, Direct connection or the name of the virtual printer).

Each connection requires a separate installation. Repeat the procedure for each connection.

When you install the printer driver using Point and Print, you cannot configure installable options manually. The installed options are displayed as the Fiery ES configuration in the printer driver. (See [Configure installable options on Windows client computers](#) on page 23.)

Before you begin, ask your administrator to do the following in Setup on the Fiery ES:

- Assign the Fiery ES a valid IP address.
The IP address or DNS name is required in the following procedure.
- Configure the Fiery ES for SMB printing.

Note: SMB printing is referred to as Windows Printing in Setup and on the Configuration page.

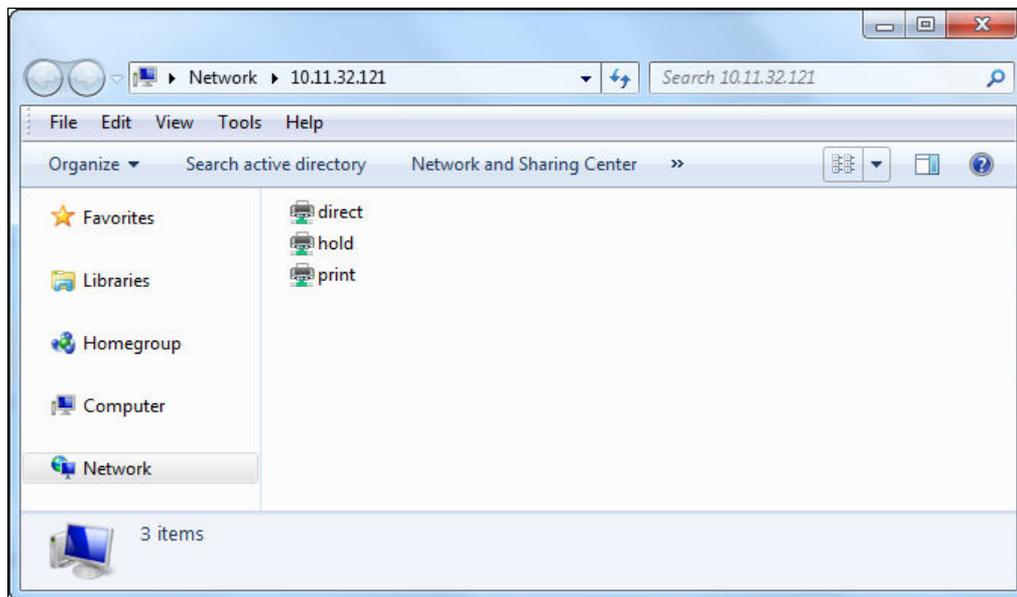
For more information, see *Configure Help* or *Command WorkStation Help*.

Set up SMB printing on Windows computers for the Fiery ES

Install the Fiery ES printer driver with SMB printing on Windows computers.

- 1 To navigate to computers and devices on your network, do one of the following:
 - Windows 10/Server 2016: Press the Windows logo key on the keyboard to open the Start screen. From the desktop, right-click the Start button in the lower-left corner of the screen. Click Control Panel. Click Hardware and Sound and then click Devices and Printers.
 - Windows 8.1/Server 2012 R2: Press the Windows logo key on the keyboard to open the Start screen. From the desktop, click the Start button in the lower-left corner of the screen. Click Control Panel and then click Devices and Printers.
 - Windows 7/Server 2008 R2: In Control Panel, click Network and Internet, and then click the View network computers and devices link from the Network and Sharing Center list.
- 2 Search for the Fiery ES on the network using either its name or IP address.
If you cannot locate the Fiery ES, contact your administrator.
- 3 Double-click the Fiery ES icon to display active print connections.

Note: For a description of each print connection, see *Configure Help*.



You must now create a printer port and install the printer driver from the User Software DVD.

Note: You can use Point and Print to install the printer driver and configure a particular connection to the Fiery ES, but if you want to configure the print driver to connect to another Fiery ES then you must install the printer driver from the User Software DVD.

- 4 Insert the User Software DVD into the DVD drive, type the name of the DVD drive (for example, **D:**), browse to the Print Drivers\Driver_Installer folder, and double-click setup.exe.
- 5 Select the printer driver language in the Fiery Driver Installer dialog box, and click Next.

The Fiery Driver Installer installation wizard appears.

- 6 Click Next to install the Fiery Driver Installer on your computer.
- 7 Read the license agreement, click I accept the terms of the license agreement and click Next.
- 8 Click Next in the Welcome to the Add Printer Wizard dialog box.
- 9 To add a local printer on the Windows client computer, do one of the following:
 - Windows 10/Server 2016: Select Add a printer.
 - Windows 8.1/Server 2012 R2: Select Add a local printer or network printer with manual settings.
 - Windows 7/Server 2008 R2: Select Add a local printer.
- 10 Select Create a New Port, select Local Port from the Type of port menu, and then click Next.
- 11 In the Port Name dialog box, type the name of the Fiery ES, followed by the printing connection, and click OK.
Enter the port name as follows: \\Aero\print where **Aero** is the name of the Fiery ES and print is the printing connection.
- 12 Click Have Disk in the dialog box displaying lists of manufacturers and printers.
You will now install the printer driver from the User Software DVD.
- 13 Browse to the Print Drivers\Ps_drvr folder.
- 14 Make sure oemsetup.inf or oemsetup is selected and click Open.
- 15 Verify the path is correct in the Install From Disk dialog box and click OK.
- 16 Follow the on-screen instructions.

Download printer drivers with WebTools

WebTools allow you to download printer driver installers to your computer directly from the Fiery ES, if your administrator has turned on access to WebTools.

For information about Setup, see *Configuration and Setup*.

For information about setting up and starting WebTools, see *Utilities*.

- 1 Start your Internet or intranet browser and type the DNS name or IP address of the Fiery ES.
- 2 Expand Software Downloads.
- 3 Click the Printer Drivers link under the Windows tab.
- 4 If a dialog box prompts you to open the file or save it to disk, save it to disk.
- 5 Browse to the location where you want to save the PRNTDRV.EXE file and click Save.
The file is downloaded from the Fiery ES. This compressed file is an archive that contains multiple files.

- 6 Double-click the PRNTDRV.EXE file to extract the files.

Depending on your operating system, you might be prompted to select a location to extract the files.

After the files are copied to the specified location, the Fiery Driver Installer starts automatically.

Note: The User Account Control (UAC) feature is available on computers with the Windows operating systems supported by the Fiery ES. You must be the administrator or a user with Administrator privileges to install printer drivers. Right-click PRNTDRV.EXE and select Run as administrator. For information about supported operating systems, see *Configuration and Setup*.

- 7 Install the printer driver.

Follow the instructions for your operating system to install the printer driver. The procedures are the same as for installing from the DVD. (See [Install and complete the print connection for Windows](#) on page 12.)

Install and complete the print connection for Windows

You need to install the printer driver and then complete the setup for the print connection.

You can install the printer driver from the User Software DVD or download and install it from WebTools.

When you install the printer driver and complete the print connection, you are automatically creating a local printer (Port 9100). You can modify the port connection later, according to your network type.

- 1 To install the printer driver, do one of the following:

- Insert the User Software DVD into the DVD drive, type the name of the DVD drive (for example, D:\), browse to the Windows_User_SW\Print Drivers\Driver_Installer folder, and double-click setup.exe.

Note: When you insert the User Software DVD into the DVD drive, the Fiery Driver Installer may start automatically.

- From WebTools, after the printer driver is copied to the specified location, the Fiery Driver Installer starts automatically.

- 2 In the Fiery Driver Installer dialog box, select the printer driver language and click Next.

The Fiery Driver Installer - InstallShield Wizard appears.

- 3 Click Next in the Welcome to the InstallShield Wizard for Fiery Driver Installer dialog box.

- 4 Read the license agreement, click I accept the terms of the license agreement and click Next.

- 5 For these Windows operating systems, do the following:

- Windows 10/Server 2016: Click The printer that I want isn't listed.
- Windows 8.1/Server 2012 R2: Click The printer that I want isn't listed.

- 6 To add a local printer on the network, do one of the following:

- Windows 10/Server 2016: Select Add a local printer or network printer with manual settings.
- Windows 8.1/Server 2012 R2: Select Add a local printer or network printer with manual settings.
- Windows 7/Server 2008 R2: Select Add a local printer.

7 Select Create a new port, select Standard TCP/IP Port from the Type of port menu, and then click Next.

Note: The WSD port is supported on Windows 7 or later.

8 Do one of the following:

- Windows 10/Server 2016: Type the host name or IP address of the Fiery ES. Select the Query the printer and automatically select the driver to use check box. Click Next and proceed to step 9.
- Windows 8.1/Server 2012 R2: Type the host name or IP address of the Fiery ES. Select the Query the printer and automatically select the driver to use check box. Click Next and proceed to step 9.
- Windows 7/Server 2008 R2: Type the host name or IP address of the Fiery ES, and then click Next. Proceed to step 9.

9 In the Printers box, select your printer and click Next.

Note: Select the printer driver with "US" for North America (the default document size is Letter) or without "US" for International (the default document size is A4).

10 Type a name for the Fiery ES in the Printer name field, and click Next.

This name is used in the Devices and Printers (or Printers and Faxes or Printers) folder and the queues window.

11 Follow the on-screen instructions.

Indicate whether you want to make it the default printer. Do not share the printer and do not print a Test Page at this time.

Continue with the printer driver installation and at the last screen, click Finish.

The necessary files are installed on your hard disk drive.

12 Configure the installable options.

For more information, see [Configure installable options on Windows client computers](#) on page 23.

13 To set up a connection other than Port 9100, see [Set up Standard TCP/IP Port \(Raw or LPR\) printing connections on Windows client computers](#) on page 18.

14 To use the printer driver, you must select the following options on the Advanced tab of the printer driver:

- Spool print documents so program finishes printing faster
- Start printing immediately
- Print spooled documents first

15 Click Apply in the Fiery ES Properties dialog box, and then click OK.

Install and connect to a virtual printer

A virtual printer allows you to print to the Fiery ES using a predefined set of job settings.

You do not have to set print options manually. Before you can print to a virtual printer, the administrator must create and configure the virtual printer using Command WorkStation. After the virtual printer is set up, you can install the printer driver and printer description files on your computer from the Fiery ES using Point and Print.

For more information about setting up virtual printers, see *Command WorkStation Help*.

When you install the printer driver with Point and Print, you cannot configure installable options manually. Installable options are configured automatically. The installed options are displayed in the printer driver when you select the Two-Way Communication option.

Set up a virtual printer on a Windows computer

You need to install the printer driver and then complete the installation and setup of the virtual printer on the Windows computer.

The printer driver can be installed from the User Software DVD.

- 1 To navigate to computers and devices on your network, do one of the following:
 - Windows 10/Server 2016: Press the Windows logo key on the keyboard to open the Start screen. From the desktop, right-click the Start button in the lower-left corner of the screen. Click Control Panel. Click Hardware and Sound and then click Devices and Printers.
 - Windows 8.1/Server 2012 R2: Press the Windows logo key on the keyboard to open the Start screen. From the desktop, click the Start button in the lower-left corner of the screen. Click Control Panel and then click Devices and Printers.
 - Windows 7/Server 2008 R2: In Control Panel, click Network and Internet, and then click the View network computers and devices link from the Network and Sharing Center list.
- 2 Search for the Fiery ES on the network using either its name or IP address.
If you cannot locate the Fiery ES, contact your administrator.
- 3 Double-click the Fiery ES icon to display active print connections.
Virtual printers are listed along with the Print queue, Hold queue, and Direct connection (if those connections are active). Virtual printers are usually assigned names that indicate the type of job for which they are set up.
- 4 Insert the User Software DVD into the DVD drive, type the name of the DVD drive (for example, **D:**), browse to the Print Drivers\Driver_Installer folder, and double-click setup.exe.
- 5 In the Fiery Driver Installer dialog box, select the printer driver language and click Next.
The Fiery Driver Installer installation wizard appears.
- 6 Click Next in the Welcome to the InstallShield Wizard for Fiery Driver Installer screen.
- 7 Read the license agreement, click I accept the terms of the license agreement and then click Next.
- 8 For these Windows operating systems, do the following:
 - Windows 10/Server 2016: Click The printer that I want isn't listed.
 - Windows 8.1/Server 2012 R2: Click The printer that I want isn't listed.
- 9 To add a local printer on the network, do one of the following:
 - Windows 10/Server 2016: Select Add a local printer or network printer with manual setting.
 - Windows 8.1/Server 2012 R2: Select Add a local printer or network printer with manual setting.
 - Windows 7/Server 2008 R2: Select Add a local printer.
- 10 Select Create a new port, select Standard TCP/IP Port from the Type of port menu, and then click Next.

11 In the Port Name dialog box, type the name of the virtual printer for the printing connection, and click OK.

12 In the Printers box, select your printer and click Next.

Note: Select the printer driver with “US” for North America (the default document size is Letter) or without “US” for International (the default document size is A4).

13 Type a name for the virtual printer in the Printer name field, and click Next.

This name is used in the Printers window and the queues window.

14 Follow the on-screen instructions.

Indicate whether you want to make the virtual printer the default printer. Do not share the printer and do not print a Test Page at this time.

Continue with the printer driver installation and at the last screen, click Finish.

The virtual printer is displayed in the Devices and Printers (or Printers and Faxes or Printers) folder.

You can print to a virtual printer as you would print to any other printer. Depending on how the virtual printer is configured, you may not be able to set some print options.

Note: If you use Command WorkStation to import a PostScript file to a virtual printer and the file already specifies the number of copies, the setting for the number of copies in the PostScript file takes precedence over the number of copies set in the virtual printer.

Turn on Two-Way Communication on Windows client computers

You must turn on the Two-Way Communication option to automatically update your printer driver to reflect the options currently installed on the printer.

Note: The User Account Control (UAC) feature is available on computers with the Windows OS supported by Fiery ES. You must be the administrator or a user with Administrator privileges to add or change the installable options after the printer driver is installed. (See [Configure installable options on Windows client computers](#) on page 23.) For information about supported operating systems, see *Configuration and Setup*.

1 Navigate to the devices and printers on your network.

- **Windows 10/Server 2016:** Press the Windows logo key on the keyboard to open the Start screen. From the desktop, right-click the Start button in the lower-left corner of the screen. Click Control Panel. Click Hardware and Sound and then click Devices and Printers.
- **Windows 8.1/Server 2012 R2:** Press the Windows logo key on the keyboard to open the Start screen. From the desktop, click the Start button in the lower-left corner of the screen. Click Control Panel and then click Devices and Printers.
- **Windows 7/Server 2008 R2:** In Control Panel, click Network and Internet, and then click the View network computers and devices link from the Network and Sharing Center list.

The printers are displayed in the Devices and Printers (or Printers and Faxes or Printers) folder.

2 Right-click the Fiery ES icon and choose Printer properties or Properties.

3 Click the Installable Options tab.

4 Select the Two-Way Communication check box.

- 5 Type the Fiery ES IP address or DNS name.
- 6 Select Update Fiery Driver When Opened to display the current default settings for the printer when the printer driver is opened.
- 7 Click Update.

Note: To confirm that Two-Way Communication is turned on, click the About tab and check that the Fiery ES name and other server information are displayed.

- 8 Click Apply, and then click OK.
You must click OK for the printer driver to reflect the correct installable options.

Uninstall printer drivers from Windows client computers

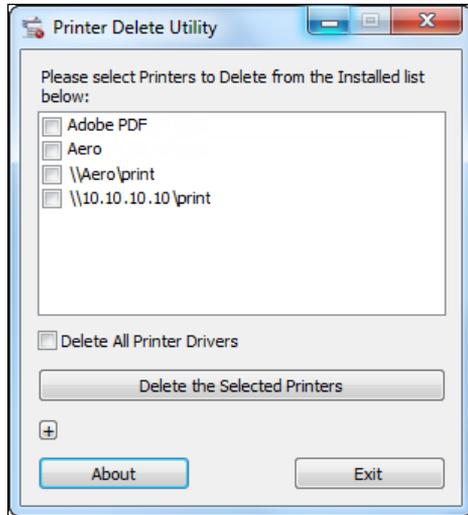
The Printer Delete Utility is installed and used locally to uninstall printer drivers from a Windows client computer. You do not need to connect to the Fiery ES before you use the software.

- 1 Install the Fiery Printer Delete Utility using one of the following methods:
 - Download Printer Drivers for Windows from WebTools.
Start your Internet or intranet browser and type the DNS name or IP address of the Fiery ES. Expand Software Downloads. Click the Printer Drivers link under the Windows tab and follow the on-screen instructions to install.
 - Insert the User Software DVD into the DVD drive of the computer.
The Fiery User Software Installer starts automatically.
Note: AutoPlay must be turned on for the Fiery User Software Installer to start automatically.
- 2 Navigate to the local folder where the printer driver files were downloaded and double-click the Fiery Printer Delete Utility folder. Double-click setup.exe and follow the on-screen instructions to install the utility.
- 3 Click Start, select Programs or All Programs, and then select Fiery.

4 Select Printer Delete Utility.

Any Fiery ES printer drivers found on your computer are listed.

Note: All printer drivers installed on your computer are listed.



5 Do one of the following:

- To delete a printer, select the check box next to the printer name and click Delete the Selected Printers.
- To delete all of the installed printer drivers, select the Delete All Printer Drivers check box, and click OK.

6 When you finish deleting printer drivers, click Exit.

Setting up Windows computers for printing

After the printer driver is installed on the Windows client computer, you need to configure the proper connection for your networked Fiery ES printer.

To print from Windows computers, you or the administrator must perform the following tasks to set up a connection:

- Set up network servers, if any.
- Set up the Fiery ES to accept print jobs from your computer.
- Configure a port on each Windows computer for the network type.

Setting up printing connections on Windows client computers

The print connections must be set up on the Windows client computers.

The Fiery ES supports the following printing connections:

- SMB
- Standard TCP/IP (RAW or LPR)

- IPP or IPP over SSL
- FTP
- WSD

Set up Standard TCP/IP Port (Raw or LPR) printing connections on Windows client computers

After you install the printer driver, you can add or configure the Setup for the Standard TCP/IP Port (Raw or LPR) connection on a Windows client computer.

To complete the Standard TCP/IP Port (Raw or LPR) connection, do the following:

- Prepare the Fiery ES to accept print jobs using Standard TCP/IP Port (Raw or LPR) protocols.
- Turn on LPD or Port 9100 on the Fiery ES.
- Configure the computer for the TCP/IP connection.

For more information about Setup, see *Command WorkStation Help*.

Before you complete the following procedure, contact your administrator for the IP address assigned to the Fiery ES.

The TCP/IP protocol should be installed as a default on the Windows computer. For Port 9100, you can set up the connection and install the printer driver in one procedure.

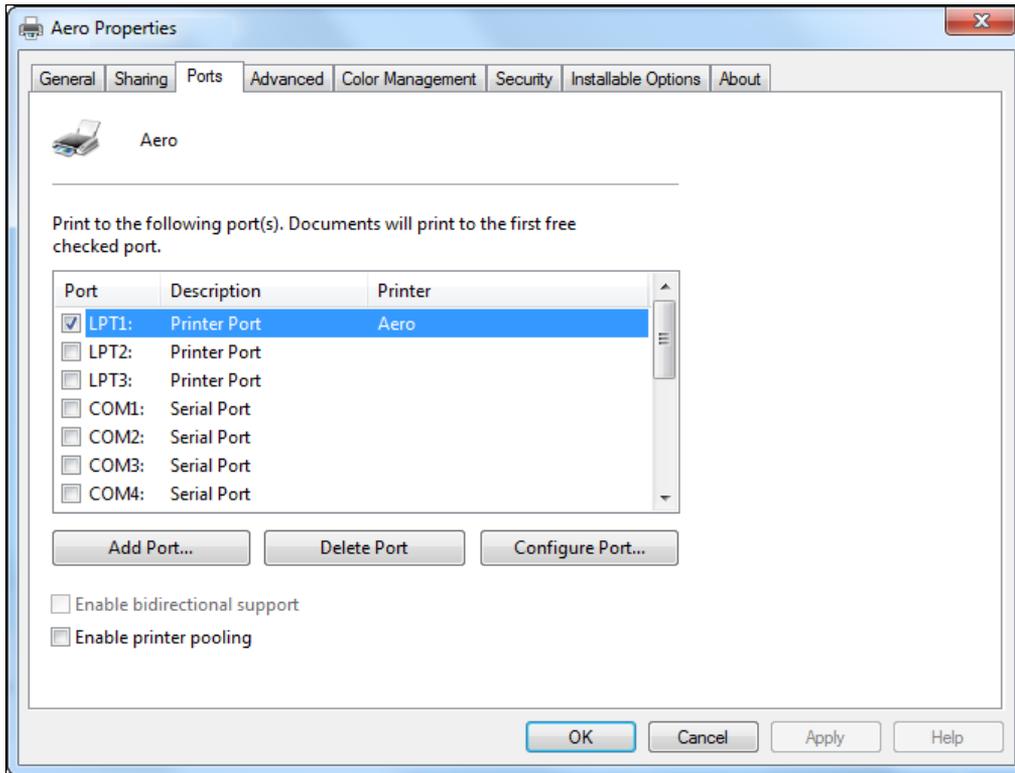
Note: You can also set up the LPR Port connection by installing Print Services for UNIX, which is supplied as an add-on Windows component. For more information, see the documentation that accompanies Windows.

- 1 Navigate to the devices and printers on your network.

The printers are displayed in the Devices and Printers (or Printers and Faxes or Printers) folder.

- 2 Right-click the Fiery ES icon and choose Printer properties or Properties.

3 Click the Ports tab.

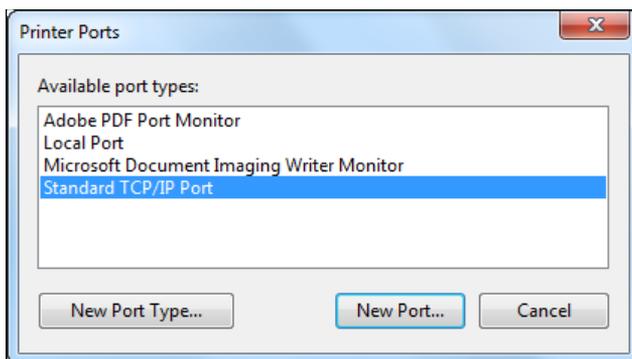


4 To add a new port, click Add Port.

To change the port settings, proceed to step 10.

5 In the Printer Ports dialog box specify the port type, do one of the following:

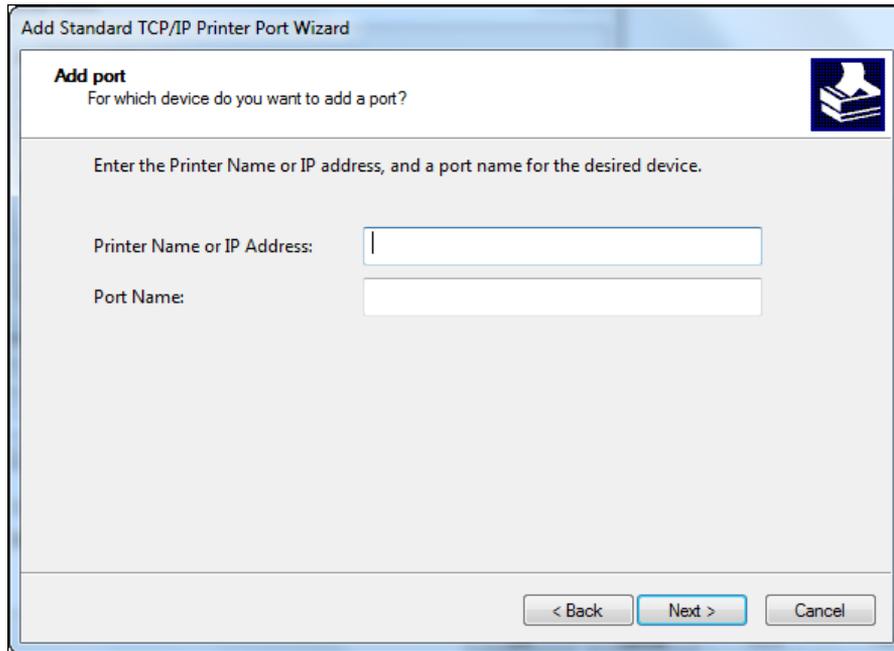
- Select Standard TCP/IP Port from the list of Available port types and click New Port.
- Double-click Standard TCP/IP Port in the list.



The Add Standard TCP/IP Printer Port Wizard dialog box appears.

6 Click Next.

- 7 Type the Fiery ES IP address.



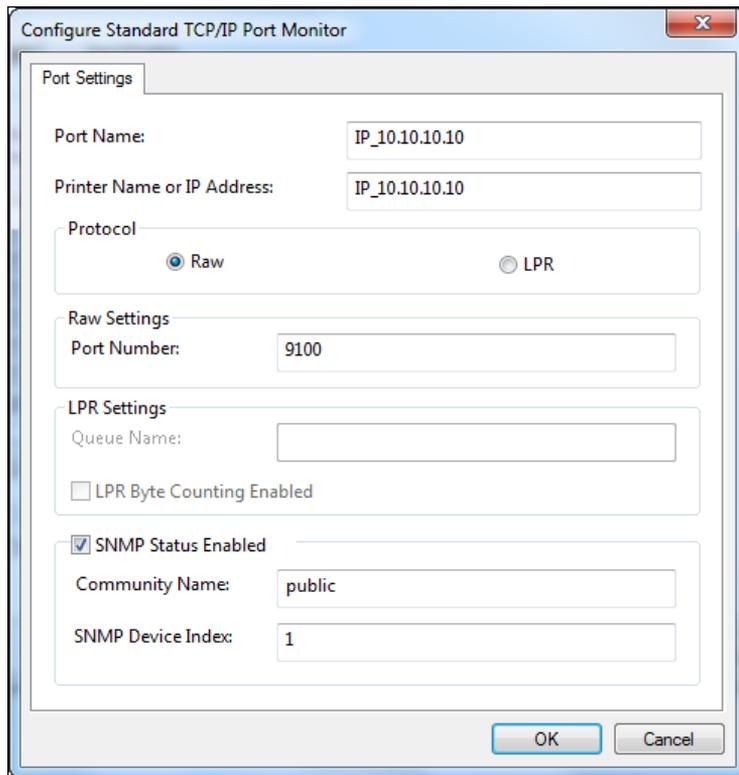
- 8 Click Next.
- 9 Click Finish to close the Add Standard TCP/IP Printer Port Wizard dialog box, and then click Close in the Printer Ports dialog box.

To change the default setting, proceed to step 10.

If you do not want to change the default setting, the setting is now completed.

Note: Port 9100 was set as the default setting in [Install and complete the print connection for Windows](#) on page 12.

10 Click Configure Port on the Ports tab of the Properties dialog box.



11 To set up the port settings, do one of the following:

- To use LPR printing, select LPR in the Protocol area and LPR Byte Counting Enabled in the LPR Settings area.

Note: You can also proceed without selecting LPR Byte Counting Enabled.

- To use Port 9100 printing, select Raw in the Protocol area.

The port number 9100 automatically appears in the Raw Settings area. This is the default port number. You can print to the printer connection selected for Port 9100 printing on the Fiery ES.

To specify a specific port number, see step [12](#).

12 Type the name of the print connection.

For Port 9100, type the following port numbers for each print connection in the Raw Settings area:

- Fiery ES default: **9100**
- direct: **9101**
- print: **9102**
- hold: **9103**

Note: Type the number *exactly* as shown.

13 When the SNMP Status Enabled check box is selected, spooling is stopped if the printer driver or spooler detects an error status on the Fiery ES.

14 Click OK to close the Configure Standard TCP/IP Port Monitor dialog box.

Note: The Fiery ES supports printing in the IPv6 environment on Windows operating systems. For information about supported operating systems, see *Configuration and Setup*.

15 Click Apply in the Fiery ES Properties dialog box, and then click OK.

Complete IPP connections on Windows client computers

With Internet Printing Protocol (IPP), print jobs are sent to the Fiery ES over the Internet from Windows computers.

Before you begin, perform the following tasks:

- Make sure that the Fiery ES is configured for TCP/IP printing and IPP printing. (See *Command WorkStation Help*.)
- Specify the printing destination on your computer.
IPP over SSL connections is supported.

Note: Using IPP over SSL connection requires certificates on Windows operating systems. For information about supported operating systems and on certificate creation, see *Configuration and Setup*. You can manage certificates from Configure. (See *Command WorkStation Help*.)

1 Navigate to the devices and printers on your network.

The printers are displayed in the Devices and Printers (or Printers and Faxes or Printers) folder.

2 To add a printer, do one of the following:

- Click Add a printer, and then select Add a network, wireless, or Bluetooth printer or Add a network printer.
- Double-click the Add Printer icon, click Next, and then select Network printer and click Next.

3 To search for a printer on the network, do one of the following:

- Windows 10/Server 2016: If the printer search takes a long time, click The printer that I want isn't listed.
- Windows 8.1/Server 2012 R2: If the printer search takes a long time, click Stop, and then click The printer that I want isn't listed.
- Windows 7/Server 2008 R2: If the printer search takes a long time, click Stop, and then click The printer that I want isn't listed.

4 To connect to a printer on the network, do one of the following:

- Windows 10/Server 2016: Click Select a shared printer by name, and in the URL field, type the IP address or DNS name of the Fiery ES, followed by the name of the connection (print, hold, or direct).

For example, **http://10.10.10.150/ipp/print** or **http://DNS name of server/ipp/print** sends the job to the Print queue on the Fiery ES.

Note: The URL for the printer is not case-sensitive.

- Windows 8.1/Server 2012 R2: Click Select a Shared printer by name, and in the URL field, type the IP address or DNS name of the Fiery ES, followed by the name of the connection (print, hold, or direct).

For example, **http://10.10.10.150/ipp/print** or **http://DNS name of server/ipp/print** sends the job to the Print queue on the Fiery ES.

Note: The URL for the printer is not case-sensitive.

- Windows 7/Server 2008 R2: Click Select a Shared printer by name, and in the URL field, type the IP address or DNS name of the Fiery ES, followed by the name of the connection (print, hold, or direct).

For example, **http://10.10.10.150/ipp/print** or **http://DNS name of server/ipp/print** sends the job to the Print queue on the Fiery ES.

Note: The URL for the printer is not case-sensitive.

5 Click Next.

6 To install the printer driver, do one of the following:

- Windows 10/Server 2016: Select the manufacturer and model of your printer and click OK.
- Windows 8.1/Server 2012 R2: Click Install driver.
- Windows 7/Server 2008 R2: Click Install driver.

7 If you are installing the PostScript printer for the first time, follow the procedure [Install and complete the print connection for Windows](#) on page 12.

8 Indicate whether you want to make the Fiery ES the default printer.

- Windows 10/Server 2016: Click Finish.
- Windows 8.1/Server 2012 R2: Click Next.
- Windows 7/Server 2008 R2: Click Next.

9 To complete the printer driver installation, click Finish.

Configure installable options on Windows client computers

After you complete the printer driver installation, you must configure the Fiery ES for the options installed on the printer to allow the Fiery ES to take advantage of the printer options.

Configure the options manually, or for TCP/IP network connections, use the Two-Way Communication option to configure the options automatically.

Note: When you configure installable options manually, make sure to leave Two-Way Communication and Update Fiery Driver When Opened options unchecked.

For information about specifying installable options, see printer driver help.

Note: The User Account Control (UAC) feature is available on computers with the Windows operating systems supported by the Fiery ES. You must log on with Administrator privileges to add or change the installable options after the printer driver is installed. For more information about supported operating systems, see *Configuration and Setup*.

- 1 Navigate to the devices and printers on your network.
The printers are displayed in the Devices and Printers (or Printers and Faxes or Printers) folder.
- 2 For Windows computers with User Account Control, right-click the Fiery ES icon, select Run as administrator, and then select Printer properties or Properties.
The User Account Control dialog box opens.
- 3 Select the User that has administrator privileges, type the password, and then click OK.
- 4 Right-click the Fiery ES icon and choose Printer properties or Properties.
- 5 Click the Installable Options tab and make your selections.
- 6 Click Apply, and then click OK.
You must click OK for the printer driver to reflect the correct installable options.

Configure installable options for printer drivers installed with the Add Printer Wizard on Windows client computers

After you install the printer driver, you must configure the installable options.

If you install the printer driver from Add Printer Wizard and then use Two-Way Communication to configure the installable options, the installable options are not configured properly.

- 1 After you install the printer driver, right-click the Fiery ES icon, select Printer properties, click the Installable Options tab, and then select your installable options.
- 2 Click Apply, and then click OK.
You must click OK for the printer driver to reflect the correct installable options.

Printing from Windows client computers

You can print to the Fiery ES just as you would print to any other printer from a Windows application.

You can print from a networked Windows computer or a computer using Windows (WINS) printing. Select the Fiery ES as the current printer in the Printer Name list, specify print options, and then print the document from the application.

The following list includes other methods to print to the Fiery ES and describes where to find information about these features:

- Downloading files to the Fiery ES with the Docs tab in WebTools. (See *Utilities*.)
- Printing documents with E-mail Services. (See [E-mail Service](#) on page 51.)
- Printing documents with Fiery Hot Folders. (See *Fiery Hot Folders Help* or *Utilities*.)
- Printing documents with Command WorkStation. (See *Command WorkStation Help*.)
- Printing documents on the USB flash drive to the Fiery ES. (See [Printing from a USB flash drive](#) on page 53.)
- Printing documents with PrintMe cloud printing. (See [PrintMe cloud printing](#) on page 58.)
- Printing documents with Web Services Device (WSD) printing. (See [Web Services for Devices printing](#) on page 61.)

The following list includes information about printing and saving files to the Fiery ES and describes where to find information about these features:

- Achieving optimal printing results from applications. (See *Color Printing* and *Fiery Color Reference*.)
- Printing jobs from Windows applications. (See [Print jobs from Windows applications](#) on page 25.)
- Specifying default print options. (See [Specify default print options for print jobs on Windows client computers](#) on page 27.)
- Customizing the Quick Access icon. (See [Customize the Quick Access icon in the Windows printer driver](#) on page 27.)
- Viewing the printer status. (See [View the printer status](#) on page 28.)
- Saving files to print to a remote location. (See [Saving files to print at a remote location](#) on page 28.)
- Printing custom page sizes. (See [Defining and printing custom page sizes](#) on page 98.)

Print jobs from Windows applications

To print from Windows applications, install the PostScript printer driver, and then specify print options for a particular job before sending it to the Fiery ES for printing.

Be sure to configure the options on the Advanced tab of the printer driver after installation is complete. (See [Installing Windows printer drivers](#) on page 9.)

If you print to a virtual printer, you may not be able to set some print options, depending on how the virtual printer is configured.

Some print options that are selectable from an application are similar to print options that are specific to the Fiery ES and the printer. In these cases, use the print options specific to the Fiery ES and the printer. These options appear on the Fiery Printing tab. The application may not set up the file properly for printing on the Fiery ES, resulting in unexpected finishing, printing errors, or longer processing time.

If you specify incompatible print settings when printing a document, the Conflict dialog box provides instructions to resolve the conflict.

Some print options, such as expert color settings and VDP master information, are available only if Two-Way Communication is turned on or a particular installable option is configured. For information about Two-Way Communication, see printer driver help. (See [Configure installable options on Windows client computers](#) on page 23.)

If you select Printer's default, the job prints according to the settings that the administrator specified in Setup. (See [Print options and default settings](#) on page 63.)

Set print options for a specific print job with the Windows printer driver

After you install the Windows printer driver on the client computer, you can set print options for a print job.

- 1 In your application, select File > Print, and select the Fiery ES as your printer.
- 2 Click Properties.
- 3 Click the Fiery Printing tab.

The Fiery Printing tab serves as the control center for all frequently used printing functions.

When you save the print options in a preset, the following option settings are not reflected:

- Job Info options: Job notes > Secure print, User authentication > Password, Account track > Department name, Account track > Account password, Server authentication > Authentication server name, Project code, and Project password
- Layout option: Impose

For information about using presets, see printer driver help.

Note: For a list of print options, see [Print options and default settings](#) on page 63.

- 4 Specify print options and settings for your job.

The print options are grouped by categories. Each group or tab contains print options that are similar or complement one another.

- Quick Access- Contains duplicate print options from the other job properties groups. It is customizable, so any print option can be added or removed from the view. The Quick Access tab lets you find print options quickly without browsing through all of the Job Properties tabs. (See [Customize the Quick Access icon in the Windows printer driver](#) on page 27.)
- Job Info- All information about the job, including user information that may be required for user authentication and job handling. (See [Job Info options](#) on page 63.)
- Media- Attributes and sources of paper to print and insert. (See [Media options](#) on page 68.)
- Layout- Defines the imposition of the print job and the booklet process on the media/sheet, except for positioning that compensates for finishing options, for example, Tray Alignment. (See [Layout options](#) on page 70.)
- Color- Color settings and additional features (when optional color features are turned on). (See [Color options](#) on page 77.)
- Image- All Image Quality settings supported by the connected Fiery ES and printer. (See [Image options](#) on page 84.)
- Finishing- Print options related only to finishing equipment on the printer, and also image shifting to compensate for finishing options. These options override settings in Fiery ES Printer Setup but can be changed from Command WorkStation. (See [Finishing options](#) on page 86.)
- VDP- All Variable Data Printing (VDP) settings, such as FreeForm and advanced VDP settings. (See [Variable Data Printing \(VDP\) options](#) on page 87.)

- **Stamping-** All image stamping options that add or hide/remove any image on the job. This also includes watermark properties that define the placement and style of the watermark. (See [Stamping \(Watermark\) options](#) on page 89 or printer driver help.)
 - **Printer-** Information about printer status that includes the current paper and toner levels. (See [View the printer status](#) on page 28 or printer driver help.)
- 5** After you specify the print settings, click OK, and then click Print to send your print job.
- Note:** When you use the Enable job tracking print option, a window is displayed for your job accounting information.

Specify default print options for print jobs on Windows client computers

You can set the default print options for Windows print jobs using the Windows printer driver.

- 1** Navigate to the devices and printers on your network.
 - Windows 10/Server 2016: Press the Windows button on the keyboard to open the Start screen. From the desktop, right-click the Start button in the lower-left corner of the screen. Click Control Panel. Click Hardware and Sound and then click Devices and Printers.
 - Windows 8.1/Server 2012 R2: Press the Windows button on the keyboard to open the Start screen. From the desktop, click the Start button in the lower-left corner of the screen. Click Control Panel and then click Devices and Printers.
 - Windows 7/Server 2008 R2: In Control Panel, click Network and Internet, and then click the View network computers and devices link from the Network and Sharing Center list.

The printers are displayed in the Devices and Printers (or Printers and Faxes or Printers) folder.

- 2** Right-click the Fiery ES icon and select Printing Preferences.
- 3** Click the Fiery Printing tab.
- 4** Specify the default settings for your print job. (See [Set print options for a specific print job with the Windows printer driver](#) on page 26.)
- 5** Click OK to close the dialog box.

Customize the Quick Access icon in the Windows printer driver

The Quick Access icon can be customized with print options that you use frequently.

This saves time because you do not have to open all of the other print option icons to set the options that you placed in Quick Access.

When you place a print option in Quick Access, it still appears under its original print option icon. You can set the option from either location.

- 1** In your application, select File > Print and select the Fiery ES as your printer.
- 2** Click Properties.

- 3 Click the Fiery Printing tab.
- 4 Click Customize to specify the options shown in the Customize Quick Access dialog box.
- 5 Add or remove a shortcut by selecting one and moving it from the Available Shortcuts list to/from the Current Shortcuts list.
- 6 Click OK to save your changes.

For more information about Quick Access, see printer driver help.

Fiery Driver Updater

The Fiery Driver Updater notification is displayed by the default setting. When updates are available, the Fiery Driver Updater notification window opens. You can update the printer driver by clicking the Update button.

You can also start the Fiery Driver Updater by clicking Check for driver update on the About tab of the Printer Properties window.

If you prefer to have automatic notification for updates turned off, do the following procedure.

- 1 Start the Fiery Driver Updater.
- 2 Click the settings icon at the bottom left corner of the Fiery Driver Updater window.
- 3 Clear the Show notifications option in the Preferences window.

Note: The Fiery Driver Updater updates the Fiery core driver only.

View the printer status

You can retrieve the status and levels of consumable materials of the printer from the Fiery ES and display them in the printer driver with the Two-Way Communication option.

You can retrieve its color settings from the Fiery ES and display them in the printer driver.

For information about monitoring the status of the printer, see printer driver help.

Saving files to print at a remote location

If you do not have the Fiery ES on site and are preparing files for a service bureau or other location, print the final files to the File port (as opposed to one of the local ports).

You can also print to the File port to create a file to download using the Docs tab in WebTools. For instructions on printing to the File port, see the documentation that accompanies Windows.

Mac OS for Fiery ES

The Fiery ES can be set up as a printer on a Mac OS computer by installing the printer driver that correspond to your printer and setting up the Fiery ES for printing.

Printer drivers provide a way to communicate information about print jobs between your applications, the Fiery ES, and the printer.

Note: Select the printer driver with "US" for North America (the default document size is Letter) or without "US" for International (the default document size is A4).

Installing printer driver on a Mac OS computer

Installing the printer driver is the first step to set up the Fiery ES as a printer.

Note: If the Fiery ES printer driver is already installed, you must uninstall it before you install a new driver. (See [Uninstall printer driver from a Mac OS computer](#) on page 30.)

Install the Mac OS printer driver

You can install the printer driver from the User Software DVD, as well as the software for Mac OS computers.

- 1 Quit all open applications.
- 2 Insert the User Software DVD into the DVD drive.
- 3 Open the Mac_User_SW folder.
- 4 Double-click Fiery Printer Driver.dmg.
- 5 Double-click Fiery Printer Driver.pkg and click Continue.
- 6 Read the license and click Continue.
- 7 Follow the on-screen instructions.

The Fiery Printer Driver Installer installs the printer driver that correspond to the Fiery ES.

Note: When the printer driver is added with the Bonjour connection, the last three bytes of the Mac OS address is added to the Fiery ES name.

- 8 If you can find the Fiery ES from the list of printers by Network Discovery, do one of the following:
 - Select the Fiery ES, and continue to install the printer driver by specifying the Print queue. The printer uses the Bonjour connection.
 - If you specify the Hold queue, the printer uses the LPD (LPR) protocol.
- 9 If you cannot find the Fiery ES (on a different subnet) and you want to use Port9100/LPR/ipp or want to connect to a virtual printer, then click Install Printer Driver Only.
 You need to associate the printer driver from System Preferences > Printers & Scanners with the Fiery ES.

Download printer drivers with WebTools

WebTools allow you to download printer driver installers to your computer directly from the Fiery ES, if your administrator has configured access to WebTools.

For more information about setting up and starting WebTools, see *Utilities*.

- 1 Start your Internet or intranet browser and type the DNS name or IP address of the Fiery ES.
- 2 Expand Software Downloads.
- 3 Click the Printer Drivers link under the Mac OSX tab.
 A file named Fiery Printer Driver.dmg is downloaded to your desktop.
Note: If the file is not on the desktop, open the Downloads folder.
- 4 Double-click Fiery Printer Driver.dmg.
- 5 Double-click Fiery Printer Driver.pkg and click Continue.
- 6 Read the license and click Continue.
- 7 Follow the on-screen instructions.

Uninstall printer driver from a Mac OS computer

The Fiery Software Uninstaller utility is used to remove printer drivers from the Mac OS computer. It is installed and used locally on your Mac OS computer.

Install and use the Fiery Software Uninstaller utility

- 1 Copy the Fiery Software Uninstaller.dmg to your desktop from the User Software DVD.
- 2 Double-click Fiery Software Uninstaller.dmg.
 The Fiery Software Uninstaller opens in the Finder, displaying the Fiery Software Uninstaller icon and an arrow pointing to a link to the Applications folder.
- 3 Drag the Fiery Software Uninstaller icon to the Applications folder.

- 4 Open the Applications folder and double-click the Fiery Software Uninstaller icon.
 - 5 Click the Printers tab if it is not already selected.
 - 6 Select a printer from the Installed Printers list.
 - 7 Do one of the following:
 - Click Remove Printer and Driver to remove the printer along with its printer driver files.
 If you want to remove the printer and the associated printer driver files, you can select only one printer at a time.
 - Click Remove Printer to remove the printer from the Installed Printers list only, but leave the printer driver files installed.
 The utility can remove only printers that are not currently in use or open on the Dock.
- Note:** If more than one printer uses the same printer driver file, removing the printer driver file also removes all printers using that printer driver.
- 8 To confirm that you want to delete the printer, type the password for your Mac OS computer in the dialog box and click OK.
 - 9 Click the Drivers tab to view the installed printer drivers.
 - 10 Close the Fiery Software Uninstaller dialog box.

Delete the Fiery Software Uninstaller utility

- Delete the Fiery Software Uninstaller icon from the Applications folder.

Set up Mac OS computers for printing

After the printer driver that corresponds to your printer has been installed, you must set up the Mac OS computer for printing to the Fiery ES.

Set up the Fiery ES from the Print dialog box on a macOS Sierra 10.12

- 1 Open a file in your application.
- 2 Select File > Print.
- 3 Select Add Printer from the Printer menu.
 In the dialog box that appears, select a printer connection.

Set up printing on a macOS Sierra 10.12 client computer

After you have the Fiery ES printer driver installed, you must set up printing to the Fiery ES on a client computer running macOS Sierra 10.12. You can add the printer with the LPR, Port 9100 or IPP connection.

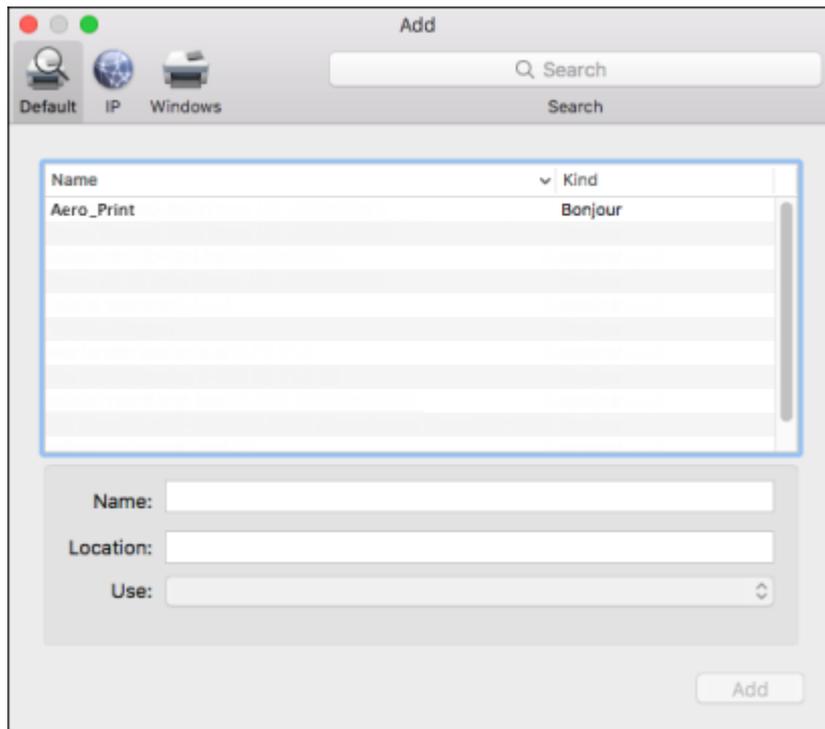
Set up the Fiery ES with Printers & Scanners on a macOS Sierra 10.12 client computer

- 1 Select Apple menu > System Preferences, and then select Printers & Scanners.
- 2 Click the + button and select Add Printer or Scanner.
In the dialog box that appears, select one of the printer connections:
 - Default
 - IP

Add a printer with the Default connection on a macOS Sierra 10.12 client computer

You can add a printer with the Default connection on a macOS Sierra 10.12 client computer.

- 1 Click the Default icon in the Add dialog box.



The names of printers with default connections are listed.

The names of the virtual printers appear as *printer name : virtual printer name* in the list of printers.

Any published virtual printer is available over LPR and FTP.

Note: SMB printing is not supported for macOS Sierra 10.12.

- 2 Select the Fiery ES from the list.

The information about the selected printer appears at the bottom of the Default pane. The appropriate printer driver for the Fiery ES is automatically selected.

- 3 Click Add.

The Fiery ES name appears in the list of printers.

- 4 Select Fiery ES.

- 5 Click Options & Supplies, and then click the Options tab.

- 6 Specify the installable option settings, and then click OK.

For information about configuring installable options, see printer driver help.

Obtain the IP address of the Fiery ES on a macOS Sierra 10.12 client computer

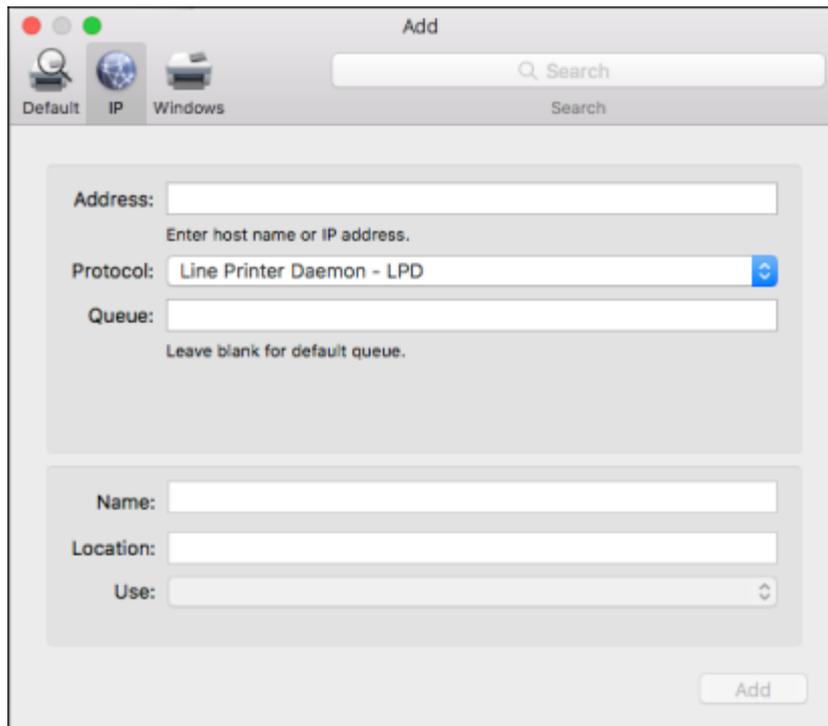
When the Bonjour connection is used for the Fiery ES printer driver on a macOS Sierra 10.12 client computer, you can find out the IP address of the Fiery ES from the printer's Webpage.

- 1 Select Apple menu > System Preferences, and then select Printers & Scanners.
- 2 Select the Fiery ES from the list, and then click Options & Supplies.
- 3 Click the General tab, and then click Show Printer Webpage.
- 4 Click the Configure tab.
- 5 Scroll to Network Protocol Setup, locate the IP address for the Fiery ES, and record it for future reference.
 The IP address is needed to turn on Two-Way Communication in the printer driver.
 For information about Two-Way Communication, see printer driver help.
- 6 Click the Close button to exit WebTools.
- 7 Click OK to close the Options & Supplies pane.
- 8 Close the Printers & Scanners dialog box.

Add a printer with the IP Printer connection on a macOS Sierra 10.12 client computer

You can add a printer with the IP Printer connection on a macOS Sierra 10.12 client computer.

- 1 Click the IP icon in the Add dialog box.



2 Do one of the following:

- For LPD printing, select Line Printer Daemon - LPD from the Protocol list, type the Fiery ES IP address or DNS name in the Address field, and then type the print connection (print or hold) or published virtual printer name in the Queue field.
- For Port 910x printing, select HP Jetdirect - Socket from the Protocol list, type the Fiery ES IP address or DNS name in the Address field. The Queue field can be left empty.
- For IPP printing, select Internet Printing Protocol - IPP from the Protocol list and type the Fiery ES IP address or DNS name in the Address field, and then type **ipp/** followed by the print connection (print, hold, direct, or name of virtual printer) in lowercase letters in the Queue field.

Note: The Fiery ES requires a queue name. If the Queue field is left empty, the default queue is used.

The IP address or DNS name appears in the Name field.

3 Choose Select Software from the Use menu.

4 Locate the printer manufacturer or model in the list, select the printer driver, and then click OK.

5 Click Add.

6 Specify the installable option settings in the installable options pane in the Printers & Scanners dialog box, and then click OK.

The Fiery ES with its IP address appears in the list of printers.

For information about configuring installable options, see printer driver help.

Set up printing on a Mac OS X v10.11 client computer

After you have the Fiery ES printer driver installed, you must set up printing to the Fiery ES on a client computer running Mac OS X v10.11. You can add the printer with the LPR, Port 9100 or IPP connection.

Set up the Fiery ES from the Print dialog box on a Mac OS X v10.11 client computer

1 Open a file in your application.

2 Select File > Print.

3 Select Add Printer from the Printer menu.

In the dialog box that appears, select a printer connection.

Set up the Fiery ES with Printers & Scanners on a Mac OS X v10.11 client computer

1 Select Apple menu > System Preferences, and then select Printers & Scanners.

2 Click the + button to add a printer.

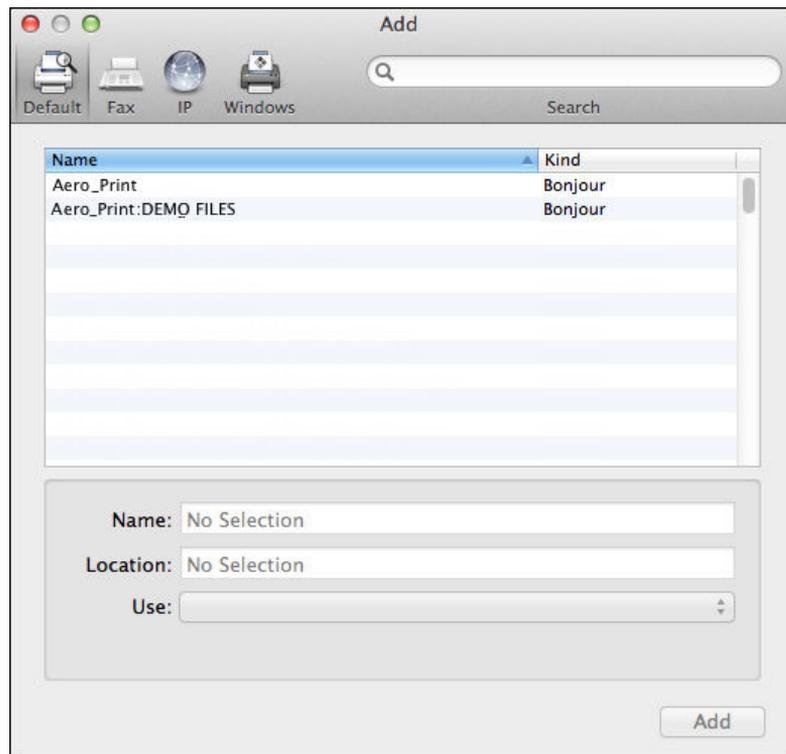
In the dialog box that appears, select one of the printer connections:

- Default
- IP Printer

Add a printer with the Default connection on a Mac OS X v10.11 client computer

You can add a printer with the Default connection on a Mac OS X v10.11 client computer.

- 1 Click the Default icon in the Add dialog box.



The names of printers with default connections are listed.

The names of the virtual printers appear as *printer name : virtual printer name* in the list of printers.

Any published virtual printer is available over LPR and FTP.

Note: SMB printing is not supported for Mac OS X v10.11.

- 2 Select the Fiery ES from the list.

The information about the selected printer appears at the bottom of the Default pane. The appropriate printer driver for the Fiery ES is automatically selected.

- 3 Click Add.

The Fiery ES name appears in the list of printers.

- 4 Select Fiery ES.

- 5 Click Options & Supplies, and then click the Options tab.

- 6 Specify the installable option settings, and then click OK.

For information about configuring installable options, see printer driver help.

Obtain the IP address of the Fiery ES on a Mac OS X v10.11 client computer

When the Bonjour connection is used for the Fiery ES printer driver on a Mac OS X v10.11 client computer, you can find out the IP address of the Fiery ES from the printer's Webpage.

- 1 Select Apple menu > System Preferences, and then select Printers & Scanners.
- 2 Select the Fiery ES from the list, and then click Options & Supplies.
- 3 Click the General tab, and then click Show Printer Webpage.
- 4 Click the Configure tab.
- 5 Scroll to Network Protocol Setup, locate the IP address for the Fiery ES, and record it for future reference.

The IP address is needed to turn on Two-Way Communication in the printer driver.

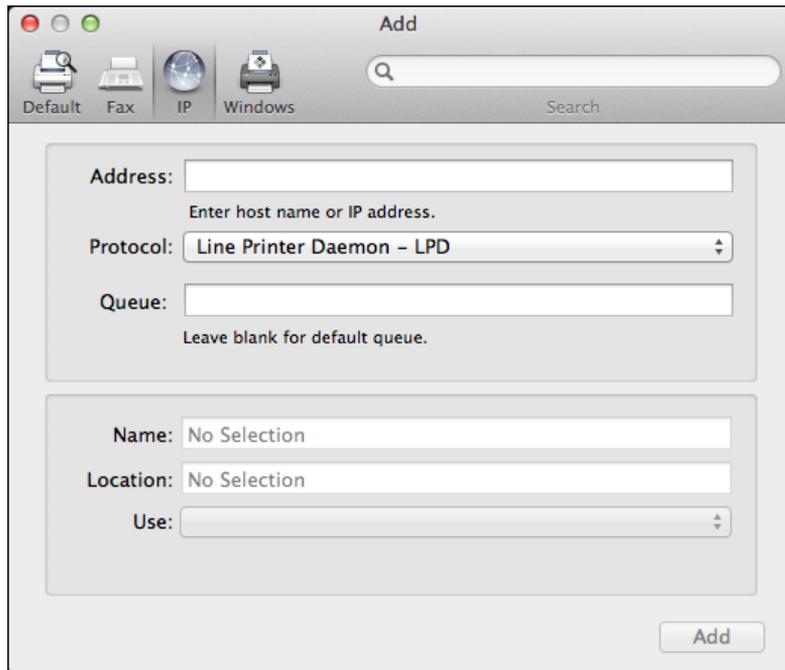
For information about Two-Way Communication, see printer driver help.

- 6 Click the Close button to exit WebTools.
- 7 Click OK to close the Options & Supplies pane.
- 8 Close the Printers & Scanners dialog box.

Add a printer with the IP Printer connection on a Mac OS X v10.11 client computer

You can add a printer with the IP Printer connection on a Mac OS X v10.11 client computer.

- 1 Click the IP icon in the Add dialog box.



- 2 Do one of the following:

- For LPD printing, select Line Printer Daemon - LPD from the Protocol list, type the Fiery ES IP address or DNS name in the Address field, and then type the print connection (print or hold) or published virtual printer name in the Queue field.
- For Port 910x printing, select HP Jetdirect - Socket from the Protocol list, type the Fiery ES IP address or DNS name in the Address field. The Queue field can be left empty.
- For IPP printing, select Internet Printing Protocol - IPP from the Protocol list and type the Fiery ES IP address or DNS name in the Address field, and then type **ipp/** followed by the print connection (print, hold, direct, or name of virtual printer) in lowercase letters in the Queue field.

Note: The Fiery ES requires a queue name. If the Queue field is left empty, the default queue is used.

The IP address or DNS name appears in the Name field.

- 3 Choose Select Software from the Use menu.
- 4 Locate the printer manufacturer or model in the list, select the printer driver, and then click OK.
- 5 Click Add.
- 6 Specify the installable option settings in the installable options pane in the Printers & Scanners dialog box, and then click OK.

The Fiery ES with its IP address appears in the list of printers.

For information about configuring installable options, see printer driver help.

Set up printing on a Mac OS X v10.10 client computer

After you have the Fiery ES printer driver installed, you must set up printing to the Fiery ES on a client computer running Mac OS X v10.10. You can add the printer with the LPR, Port 9100 or IPP connection.

Set up the Fiery ES from the Print dialog box on a Mac OS X v10.10 client computer

- 1 Open a file in your application.
- 2 Select File > Print.
- 3 Select Add Printer from the Printer menu.

In the dialog box that appears, select a printer connection.

Set up the Fiery ES with Printers & Scanners on a Mac OS X v10.10 client computer

- 1 Select Apple menu > System Preferences, and then select Printers & Scanners.
- 2 Click the + button to add a printer.

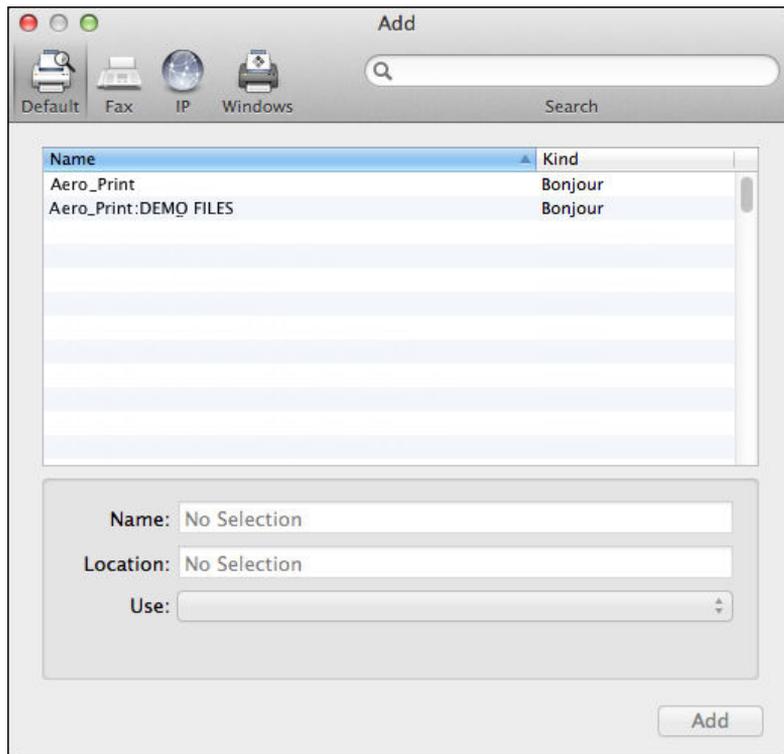
In the dialog box that appears, select one of the printer connections:

- Default
- IP Printer

Add a printer with the Default connection on a Mac OS X v10.10 client computer

You can add a printer with the Default connection on a Mac OS X v10.10 client computer.

- 1 Click the Default icon in the Add dialog box.



The names of printers with default connections are listed.

The names of the virtual printers appear as *printer name : virtual printer name* in the list of printers.

Any published virtual printer is available over LPR and FTP.

Note: SMB printing is not supported for Mac OS X v10.10.

- 2 Select the Fiery ES from the list.

The information about the selected printer appears at the bottom of the Default pane. The appropriate printer driver for the Fiery ES is automatically selected.

- 3 Click Add.

The Fiery ES name appears in the list of printers.

- 4 Select Fiery ES.

- 5 Click Options & Supplies, and then click the Options tab.

- 6 Specify the installable option settings, and then click OK.

For information about configuring installable options, see printer driver help.

Obtain the IP address of the Fiery ES on a Mac OS X v10.10 client computer

When the Bonjour connection is used for the Fiery ES printer driver on a Mac OS X v10.10 client computer, you can find out the IP address of the Fiery ES from the printer's Webpage.

- 1 Select Apple menu > System Preferences, and then select Printers & Scanners.
- 2 Select the Fiery ES from the list, and then click Options & Supplies.
- 3 Click the General tab, and then click Show Printer Webpage.
- 4 Click the Configure tab.
- 5 Scroll to Network Protocol Setup, locate the IP address for the Fiery ES, and record it for future reference.

The IP address is needed to turn on Two-Way Communication in the printer driver.

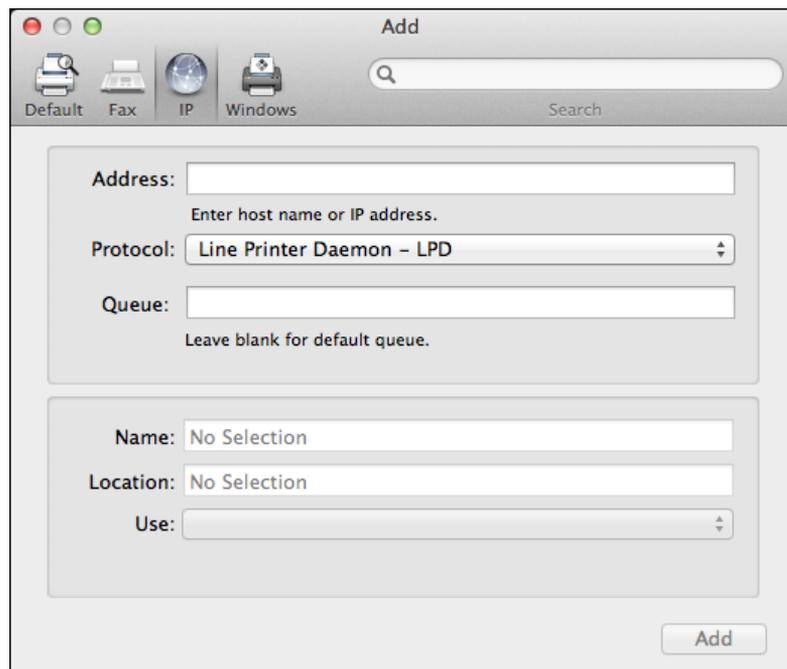
For information about Two-Way Communication, see printer driver help.

- 6 Click the Close button to exit WebTools.
- 7 Click OK to close the Options & Supplies pane.
- 8 Close the Printers & Scanners dialog box.

Add a printer with the IP Printer connection on a Mac OS X v10.10 client computer

You can add a printer with the IP Printer connection on a Mac OS X v10.10 client computer.

- 1 Click the IP icon in the Add dialog box.



2 Do one of the following:

- For LPD printing, select Line Printer Daemon - LPD from the Protocol list, type the Fiery ES IP address or DNS name in the Address field, and then type the print connection (print or hold) or published virtual printer name in the Queue field.
- For Port 910x printing, select HP Jetdirect - Socket from the Protocol list, type the Fiery ES IP address or DNS name in the Address field. The Queue field can be left empty.
- For IPP printing, select Internet Printing Protocol - IPP from the Protocol list and type the Fiery ES IP address or DNS name in the Address field, and then type **ipp/** followed by the print connection (print, hold, direct, or name of virtual printer) in lowercase letters in the Queue field.

Note: The Fiery ES requires a queue name. If the Queue field is left empty, the default queue is used.

The IP address or DNS name appears in the Name field.

3 Choose Select Software from the Use menu.

4 Locate the printer manufacturer or model in the list, select the printer driver, and then click OK.

5 Click Add.

6 Specify the installable option settings in the installable options pane in the Printers & Scanners dialog box, and then click OK.

The Fiery ES with its IP address appears in the list of printers.

For information about configuring installable options, see printer driver help.

Set up printing on a Mac OS X v10.9 client computer

After you have the Fiery ES printer driver installed, you must set up printing to the Fiery ES on a client computer running Mac OS X v10.9. You can add the printer with the LPR, Port 9100 or IPP connection.

Set up the Fiery ES from the Print dialog box on a Mac OS X v10.9 client computer

1 Open a file in your application.

2 Select File > Print.

3 Select Add Printer from the Printer menu.

In the dialog box that appears, select a printer connection.

Set up the Fiery ES with Printers & Scanners on a Mac OS X v10.9 client computer

1 Select Apple menu > System Preferences, and then select Printers & Scanners.

2 Click the + button to add a printer.

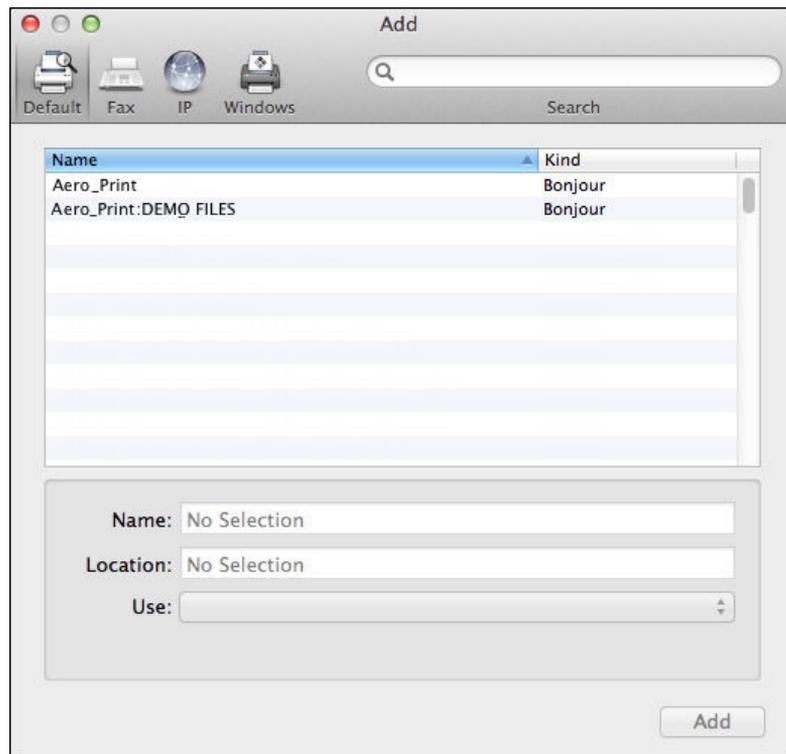
In the dialog box that appears, select one of the printer connections:

- Default
- IP Printer

Add a printer with the Default connection on a Mac OS X v10.9 client computer

You can add a printer with the Default connection on a Mac OS X v10.9 client computer.

- 1 Click the Default icon in the Add dialog box.



The names of printers with default connections are listed.

The names of the virtual printers appear as *printer name : virtual printer name* in the list of printers.

Any published virtual printer is available over LPR and FTP.

Note: SMB printing is not supported for Mac OS X v10.9.

- 2 Select the Fiery ES from the list.

The information about the selected printer appears at the bottom of the Default pane. The appropriate printer driver for the Fiery ES is automatically selected.

- 3 Click Add.

The Fiery ES name appears in the list of printers.

- 4 Select Fiery ES.

- 5 Click Options & Supplies, and then click the Options tab.

- 6 Specify the installable option settings, and then click OK.

For information about configuring installable options, see printer driver help.

Obtain the IP address of the Fiery ES on a Mac OS X v10.9 client computer

When the Bonjour connection is used for the Fiery ES printer driver on a Mac OS X v10.9 client computer, you can find out the IP address of the Fiery ES from the printer's Webpage.

- 1 Select Apple menu > System Preferences, and then select Printers & Scanners.
- 2 Select the Fiery ES from the list, and then click Options & Supplies.
- 3 Click the General tab, and then click Show Printer Webpage.
- 4 Click the Configure tab.
- 5 Scroll to Network Protocol Setup, locate the IP address for the Fiery ES, and record it for future reference.

The IP address is needed to turn on Two-Way Communication in the printer driver.

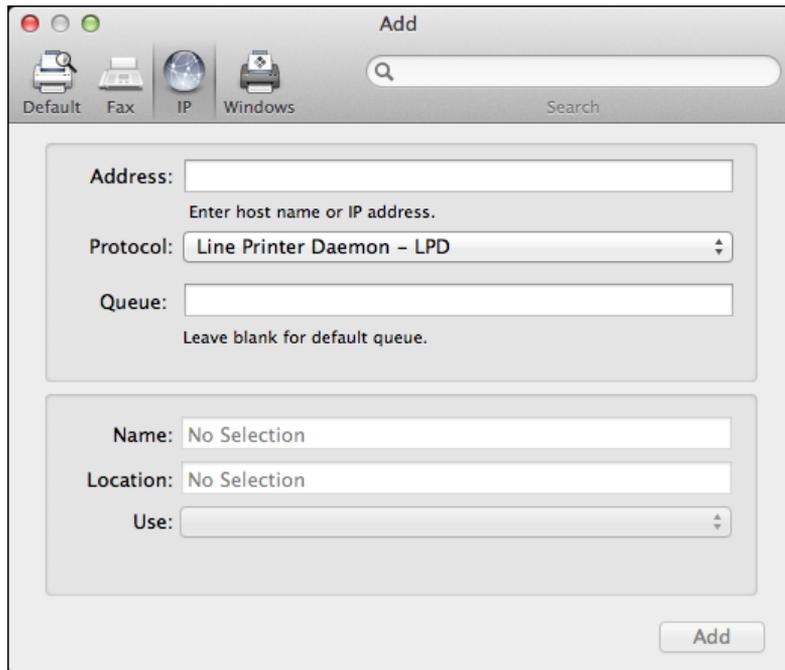
For information about Two-Way Communication, see printer driver help.

- 6 Click File > Close Window to close WebTools.
- 7 Click OK to close the Options & Supplies pane.
- 8 Close the Printers & Scanners dialog box.

Add a printer with the IP Printer connection on a Mac OS X v10.9 client computer

You can add a printer with the IP Printer connection on a Mac OS X v10.9 client computer.

- 1 Click the IP icon in the Add dialog box.



- 2 Do one of the following:

- For LPD printing, select Line Printer Daemon - LPD from the Protocol list, type the Fiery ES IP address or DNS name in the Address field, and then type the print connection (print or hold) or published virtual printer name in the Queue field.
- For Port 910x printing, select HP Jetdirect - Socket from the Protocol list, type the Fiery ES IP address or DNS name in the Address field. The Queue field can be left empty.
- For IPP printing, select Internet Printing Protocol - IPP from the Protocol list and type the Fiery ES IP address or DNS name in the Address field, and then type **ipp/** followed by the print connection (print, hold, direct, or name of virtual printer) in lowercase letters in the Queue field.

Note: The Fiery ES requires a queue name. If the Queue field is left empty, the default queue is used.

The IP address or DNS name appears in the Name field.

- 3 Choose Select Software from the Use menu.
- 4 Locate the printer manufacturer or model in the list, select the printer driver, and then click OK.
- 5 Click Add.
- 6 Specify the installable option settings in the installable options pane in the Printers & Scanners dialog box, and then click OK.

The Fiery ES with its IP address appears in the list of printers.

For information about configuring installable options, see printer driver help.

Configuring installable options on Mac OS client computers

To use the print options for the printer and Fiery ES appropriately, you must configure the Fiery ES from your computer for the options that are installed on the printer. Configure the options manually.

For information about configuring installable options, see printer driver help.

Using Desktop Printer

After adding the Fiery ES to the list of printers in the Printers & Scanners (or Print & Scan) dialog box, you can create and use the Desktop Printer feature.

For information about the Desktop Printer feature, see printer driver help.

Printing from Mac OS client computers

You can print to the Fiery ES just as you would print to any other printer from a Mac OS application.

Select the Fiery ES as the default printer in the list of printers, specify print options, and then print the document from the application.

The following list includes other methods to print to the Fiery ES and describes where to find information about these features:

- Downloading files to the Fiery ES with the Docs tab in WebTools. (See *Utilities*.)
- Printing documents with Fiery Hot Folders. (See *Fiery Hot Folders Help* or *Utilities*.)
- Printing documents with Command WorkStation. (See *Command WorkStation Help*.)
- Achieving optimal printing results from applications. (See *Color Printing* and *Fiery Color Reference*.)
- Selecting the Fiery ES in the Printers list. (See [Select the Fiery ES as the default printer on a Mac OS client computer](#) on page 46.)
- Printing jobs from Mac OS applications. (See [Set print options and printing from Mac OS applications](#) on page 47.)
- Customizing the Quick Access view. (See [Customize the Quick Access pane in the Mac OS printer driver](#) on page 49.)
- Viewing the printer status. (See [View the printer status](#) on page 50.)
- Printing custom page sizes. (See [Defining and printing custom page sizes](#) on page 98.)

Select the Fiery ES as the default printer on a Mac OS client computer

Before you print a job, you must set the Fiery ES in the Printers list as your default printer.

- 1 Make sure that the Fiery ES is connected to the network and turned on.

- 2 Select Apple menu > System Preferences, and then select Printers & Scanners (or Print & Scan).

The printers that are set up for printing are listed. The virtual printers that are configured at the Fiery ES and set up for printing are also listed.

- 3 Select Fiery ES from the Default Printer menu.
- 4 Close the window.

View queries in the Print Queue on client computers

When the printer driver establishes communication with the Fiery ES on a Mac OS client computer, the queries are listed as jobs in the Print Queue.

To view the queries, open the Print Queue.

- Select Apple menu > System Preferences > Print & Scanners (or Print & Scan), then select the Fiery ES from the list of printers, and click Open Print Queue.

The queries are not real jobs and they will disappear from the Print Queue after they are completed.

Set print options and printing from Mac OS applications

To print from Mac OS client computers, install the printer driver that corresponds to your printer.

In Mac OS applications, print options are set from the Print dialog box. (See [Installing printer driver on a Mac OS computer](#) on page 29.)

Some print options that are selectable from an application are similar to print options that are specific to the Fiery ES and the printer. In these cases, use the print options specific to the Fiery ES and the printer. These options appear in the Fiery Features pane and/or in the Printing Preferences window. The application may not set up the file properly for printing on the Fiery ES, resulting in unexpected finishing, printing errors, or longer processing time.

If you specify incompatible print settings when printing a document, the Conflict dialog box provides instructions to resolve the conflict.

Some print options are available only if Two-Way Communication is turned on or a particular installable option is configured.

You can retrieve its expert color settings from the Fiery ES when Two-Way Communication is turned on and display them in the printer driver.

For information about Two-Way Communication, see printer driver help. (See [Configuring installable options on Mac OS client computers](#) on page 46.)

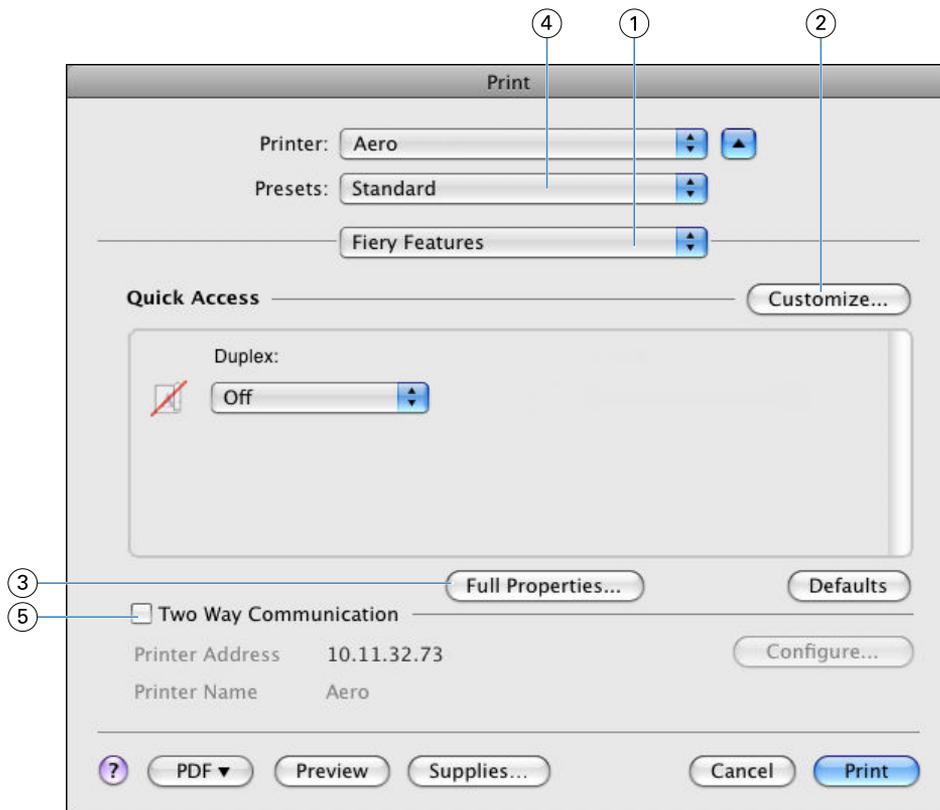
If you select Printer's default, the job prints according to the settings that the administrator specified in Setup. (See [Set print options and print a job from a Mac OS client computer](#) on page 47.)

Set print options and print a job from a Mac OS client computer

You use the printer driver to specify print options for a particular job and then print it to the Fiery ES.

- 1 In your application, select File > Print, and select the Fiery ES as your printer.

2 Select Fiery Features from the drop-down list.



- 1 *Fiery Features*
- 2 *Customize (Shortcuts), see Help*
- 3 *Full Properties*
- 4 *Presets (Job Templates), see Help*
- 5 *Two-Way Communication*

When you save the print options in a preset, the following option settings are not reflected:

- Job Info options: Job notes > Secure print, User authentication > Password, Account track > Department name, Account track > Account password, Server authentication > Authentication server name, Project code, and Project password
- Layout option: Impose

For information about using presets, see printer driver help.

For a list of print options, see [Print options and default settings](#) on page 63.

3 Click Full Properties in the Quick Access pane to specify print options and settings for your job.

The print options are grouped by categories. Each group or tab contains print options that are similar or complement one another.

- **Quick Access-** Contains duplicate print options from the other job properties groups. It is customizable, so any job override print option can be added or removed from the view. The Quick Access pane lets you find print options quickly without browsing through all of the Job Properties tabs. (See [Customize the Quick Access icon in the Windows printer driver](#) on page 27.)
 - **Job Info-** All information about the job, including user information that may be required for user authentication and job handling. (See [Job Info options](#) on page 63.)
 - **Media-** Attributes and sources of paper to print and insert. (See [Media options](#) on page 68.)
 - **Layout-** Layout defines the imposition of the print job and the booklet process on the media/sheet, except for positioning that compensates for finishing options, for example, Tray Alignment. (See [Layout options](#) on page 70.)
 - **Color-** Color settings and additional features (when optional color features are turned on). (See [Color options](#) on page 77.)
 - **Image-** All Image Quality settings supported by the connected Fiery ES and printer. (See [Image options](#) on page 84.)
 - **Finishing-** Print options related only to finishing equipment on the printer, and also image shifting to compensate for finishing options. These options override settings in Fiery ES Printer Setup but can be changed from Command WorkStation. (See [Finishing options](#) on page 86.)
 - **VDP-** All Variable Data Printing (VDP) settings, such as FreeForm and advanced VDP settings. (See [Finishing options](#) on page 86.)
 - **Stamping-** All image stamping options that add or hide/remove any image on the job. This also includes watermark properties that define the placement and style of the watermark. (See [Stamping \(Watermark\) options](#) on page 89 or printer driver help.)
 - **Printer-** Information about printer status that includes the current paper and toner levels. (See [View the printer status](#) on page 50 or printer driver help.)
- 4 After you specify the print settings, click OK, and then click Print to send your print job.

Note: When you use the Enable job tracking print option, a window is displayed for your job accounting information.

Customize the Quick Access pane in the Mac OS printer driver

The Quick Access pane can be customized with print options that you use frequently.

This saves time because you do not have to open all of the other print option icons to set the options that you placed in Quick Access.

When you place a print option in Quick Access, it still appears under its original print option icon. You can set the option from either location.

- 1 In your application, select File > Print and select the Fiery ES as your printer.
- 2 Select Fiery Features from the drop-down list.
- 3 Click Customize to specify the options shown in the Quick Access pane.

- 4 Add or remove a shortcut by selecting one and moving it from the Available Shortcuts list to/from the Current Shortcuts list.
- 5 Click OK to save your changes.
For more information about Quick Access, see printer driver help.

View the printer status

You can retrieve the status and levels of consumable materials of the printer from the Fiery ES and display them in the printer driver with the Two-Way Communication option.

You can retrieve its color settings from the Fiery ES and display them in the printer driver.

For information about monitoring the status of the printer, see printer driver help.

Other Printing Methods

You can print jobs with the Fiery ES printer driver to the Fiery ES, as well as other printing methods, such as Command WorkStation.

E-mail Service

E-mail Service allows you to control the Fiery ES using your current email infrastructure, print to remote locations, and bypass firewalls.

E-mail Service is not application-specific. You can use any email infrastructure.

The Fiery ES supports internal address books. Administrators can retrieve, add, delete, and clear addresses from address books by sending requests through email. (See *Configuration and Setup*.)

To set up E-mail Service, see *Configure Help*.

Use E-mail Service in the following ways:

- Print a job from an email application.

To print with an email client, you send a file as an email attachment. E-mail Service extracts the file and sends it to the Fiery ES. The attachment can be in any file format the Fiery ES recognizes (PS, PDF, EPS, VDP, or TIFF).

Note: E-mail Service does not process files with .vbs, .exe, or .bat extensions.

- Manage jobs using an email application.

You can manage your print jobs by submitting email commands to the Fiery ES using email.

Printing using an email client

You can submit print jobs to the Fiery ES in the form of an email attachment using your email application.

When you send an email with an attachment, E-mail Service extracts the file and sends it to the Fiery ES Print queue. The file format must be one supported by the Fiery ES.

By default, anyone can print with an email client, unless the Print address book has been set up by the administrator. If the Print address book has been set up and your email address is not in it, you cannot send files to the Fiery ES using email. (See *Configuration and Setup*.)

When User Authentication is turned on at the Fiery ES, the email attachment must have the appropriate user name and password when it is printed through email printing. As part of creating the email attachment with the Fiery ES printer driver, type the appropriate user name and password on the Job Info tab of the printer driver. The user name and password must match those defined by the administrator in the Users and Groups section of Configure. For information about Users and Groups, see *Command WorkStation Help*.

Note: The Direct connection is not supported by the email client feature.

When the attached job is printed, the email is also printed, which includes the typical header information, such as subject, date, sender, and so forth.

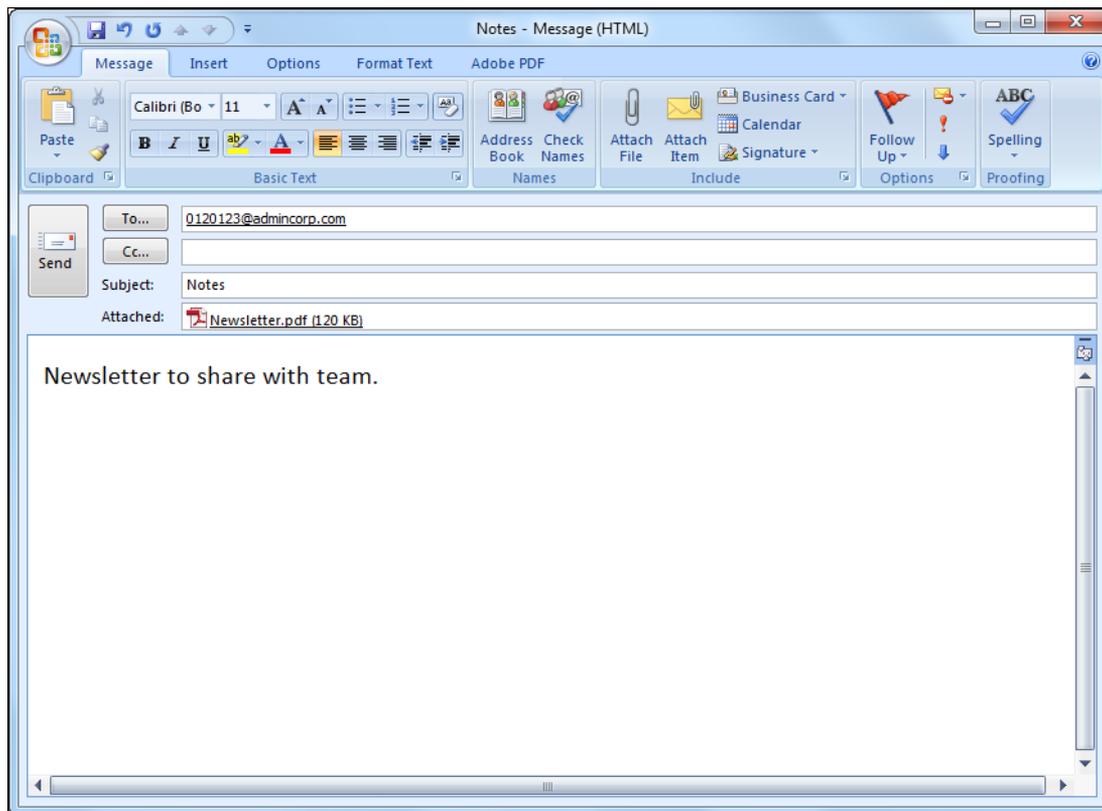
Print an email attachment with an email client

You can print an email attachment with an email client.

- 1 Open your email application.
- 2 Type the Fieri ES email address in the To: line.
- 3 Type text in the Subject line or leave the Subject line blank.
- 4 Attach the file that you want to print.

The attachment can be in any file format the Fieri ES recognizes (PS, PDF, EPS, VDP, or TIFF).

Note: If your attachment exceeds the file size limitation set by your email administrator, the email is not sent.



- 5 To identify the job or provide further processing instructions, type text in the body of the message.

Note: HTML-formatted email messages are not supported, and might not print as they appear on the remote workstation. Send email messages in plain text format.

6 Send the email.

The file is sent to the Fiery ES and the job is printed. After the Fiery ES receives the job, you receive an email notification that the print job was accepted. The email provides a job identification (ID). Use job IDs to manage jobs with email commands. The email notification indicates any current error at the printer. (See [Manage print jobs with email commands](#) on page 53.)

After the job is printed, you receive a second email notification that indicates the job printed successfully.

Manage print jobs with email commands

You can manage your print jobs by submitting commands to the Fiery ES using email.

You can cancel a job, check job status, and get help on a job. When you send a command, the Fiery ES sends an email response.

1 In your email application, type the Fiery ES email address in the To: line.

2 Type one of the following commands in the Subject line:

- To check the status of a job, type **#JobStatus<job id>** in the Subject line.

You receive a reply to your job status query. You can only get the status of the job if you sent the job or are an administrator.

- To cancel a job, type **#CancelJob<job id>** in the Subject line.

You receive a notification indicating that the job has been canceled and did not print to the Fiery ES. You can only cancel a job if you sent the job.

- To get help, type **#Help** in the Subject line.

You receive an email response that contains links that allow you to cancel jobs, check job status, and search and manage address books. Click any of the links to perform a command.

3 Send the email to the Fiery ES.

Printing from a USB flash drive

You can print files from a USB flash drive to the Fiery ES. The Fiery ES supports printing from the USB flash drive using USB Media Server.

The USB port and automatic printing feature must be enabled in Configure, as described in *Configuration and Setup* or *Command WorkStation Help*.

You can manually print files from a USB flash drive when USB Media Autoprint is disabled in Configure.

Files are automatically processed as soon as you connect the USB flash drive to the Fiery ES. The files can be from Mac OS or Windows computers, and can be any of the supported file types (DOC, EPS, PCL, PDF, PPT, PS, TIFF, or XLS).

Note: The Enable Native Document Conversion Using PrintMe option in Configure must be turned on to print DOC, PPT, and XLS files.

You can set up folders in the root of the flash drive to correspond to the Fiery ES queues:

- To send files to one of the standard print queues (print, hold, or direct) on the Fiery ES, create folders with those names in the root of the flash drive, and then drop the files into the folders.
- To print any file from the USB flash drive, manually select the file to print, specify where to send it, and select print options.
- Files in folders with Fiery ES queue names at the root level of the USB flash drive are copied automatically to the corresponding Fiery ES queue.
- To send files to a virtual printer that is configured on the Fiery ES, create a folder with the virtual printer name in the root of the flash drive, and then drop the files into the folder. Verify with your administrator that the virtual printers are published. For more information about virtual printers, see *Command WorkStation Help*.

Note: If you have more than 50 published virtual printers, you cannot print from a USB flash drive to a virtual printer.

Print files automatically from a USB flash drive

You can print files automatically from a USB flash drive only if automatic printing is turned on in Configure.

- 1 Ensure the USB port and automatic printing are enabled, as described in *Configuration and Setup* or *Command WorkStation Help*.
- 2 Create folders at the top (root) level of the USB flash drive named print, hold, direct, and the name of any virtual printer that has been configured and published on the Fiery ES.
- 3 Save the files (DOC, EPS, PCL, PDF, PPT, PS, TIFF, or XLS) from either the Mac OS or Windows computer to the USB flash drive, placing the files in the folders that correspond to the action that you want to take.
- 4 Connect the USB flash drive to the USB port on the Fiery ES.

The files are automatically printed or held according to the folder they are in.

For the location of the USB port, see *Configuration and Setup*.

- 5 After the files have arrived in the related queue, remove the USB flash drive from the Fiery ES.

 **Important:** Make sure that the USB flash drive is properly stopped before you disconnect it from the Fiery ES.

Print files manually from a USB flash drive

You can select files to print from a USB flash drive connected to the Fiery ES.

When USB Media Autoprint is disabled in Configure, you must manually select the files that you want to print from the USB flash drive and specify where you want to send them

- 1 Ensure the USB port is enabled, as described in *Configuration and Setup* or *Command WorkStation Help*.
- 2 Insert the USB flash drive into a USB port on the Fiery ES.
- 3 On the printer control panel, press the Menu button.

- 4 Press Fiery.
- 5 Press the USB Media Server tab.
 All the printable files (DOC, EPS, PCL, PDF, PPT, PS, TIFF, or XLS) on the USB flash drive are shown.
- 6 Navigate to the file that you want to print and select it.
 To open a folder, select the folder from the list then press Browse Directory.
 To return to a higher-level folder, press Upper Folder.
- 7 Select a file by pressing on the file name.
- 8 Specify print options for the file.
 - Copies (Default is 1)
 - Queue (Hold, Print, Direct, or any published virtual printer set up for the Fiery ES)
 - Duplex, Tumble, or One Side
 - Page Size (Default, list of available page sizes)
- 9 Press Print to send the file to the Fiery ES for printing or Cancel to cancel the print request.
- 10 Remove the USB flash drive from the Fiery ES.

Print and retrieve a secure print job

The Secure Print feature offers a level of security for confidential or sensitive print jobs, which print only when you are present at the printer control panel.

To use this feature, you first enter an arbitrary password into the Secure print field in the printer driver when you send your job to the Fiery ES. Then, to print your job, you re-enter the password at the printer control panel.

Send a secure print job

- 1 In your application, do one of the following:
 - On Windows computers: Select File > Print, select the Fiery ES as your printer, click Properties, and then click the Job Info icon.
 - On Mac OS X computers: Select File > Print, select the Fiery ES as your printer, select Fiery Features from the drop-down list, click Full Properties in the Quick Access pane, and then click the Job Info icon in the Printing Preferences dialog box.
- 2 Type an arbitrary password in the Secure print field.

Note: The password requires at least 1 character and can be up to 31 characters long. It is limited to alphanumeric characters and "-", "_", and "." symbols only.

For more information about typing the password, see [Job Info options](#) on page 63.

- 3 Make any other required changes to Job Properties.
- 4 Click OK to close the Fiery ES Properties dialog box.
- 5 Click OK or Print to close the Print dialog box and send your job to the Fiery ES.
 The job is sent to the printer.

Print a secure print job from the printer

- 1 On the printer control panel, press the Menu button.
- 2 Press Fiery.
- 3 Press Secure Jobs.
- 4 Tap the Secure Code field, use the keyboard to type the same password that you typed in the Secure print field of the printer driver, and then press OK.
 The print jobs that match the password are displayed in the Secure Print screen.
- 5 Press Show Files.
- 6 Select your print job or press Print All to print all secure jobs listed.
- 7 Specify the number of copies to print and then press Print or Delete.

FTP printing

You can send jobs to the Fiery ES using FTP printing if the Fiery ES is set up as an FTP server with FTP Services configured on it.

For more information about configuring FTP Services, see *Command WorkStation Help*.

You can use any FTP client application. Before you use FTP printing, the FTP client application requires the following information (see your administrator):

- IP address or DNS name for the Fiery ES
- Directory or path to send the job to, such as the Print queue, Hold queue, or published virtual printers (if supported)

Note: You cannot print to the Direct connection with FTP printing.

- User name and password (if required)

You can send the following files to the Fiery ES:

- PostScript (PS)
- Printer Control Language (PCL)
- Tagged Image File Format (TIFF)
- Portable Document Format (PDF)

Note: Encapsulated PostScript (EPS) files are not supported for FTP printing.

Print files to the Fiery ES with the FTP protocol

You can use the FTP protocol to print files to the Fiery ES.

- 1 Connect to the Fiery ES with your FTP client application.
 Folders corresponding to the Print queue, Hold queue, and any published virtual printers are displayed.
- 2 Navigate to the folder representing the print connection or published virtual printer.
- 3 Upload your job to the appropriate folder.
 After the job is printed, it is deleted from the Fiery ES.

Direct Mobile Printing

Direct Mobile Printing allows direct printing to the Fiery ES from mobile devices, such as iPad, iPhone, and iPod touch.

The Fiery ES must have certain networking options turned on in Setup. After Setup is complete, the Fiery ES appears in the list of available printers on the mobile device.

In addition, observe the following configuration requirements:

- Make sure that the Fiery ES is connected to a wireless access point on the network.
- Make sure that supported mobile devices are connected to the same wireless network as the Fiery ES. The Printer Default Paper Size is used for all Direct Mobile Printing jobs.

For information about configuring the settings in Setup on the Fiery ES, see *Configuration and Setup*.

For a list of supported mobile devices, see *Configuration and Setup*.

Print from a mobile device

You can print files from your mobile device to the Fiery ES.

- 1 On the mobile device, select the job, and then open the Print window.
 For more information, see the documentation that accompanies your device.
- 2 Select Fiery ES in the list of available printers.
- 3 Specify print settings, and click Print.

PrintMe cloud printing

Users with a PrintMe subscription can upload a document to the PrintMe Cloud Service and then print the document to the printer using the printer control panel.

Before you print:

- Make sure that the Fiery ES has an Internet connection and is connected to the network.
- Turn on PrintMe and related settings on the Fiery ES using Configure.
For information about configuring the settings in Setup on the Fiery ES, see *Configuration and Setup*.
- Upload the document to PrintMe, either at <http://www.printme.com> or send by email to **print@printme.com**.
For more information about using PrintMe, see [EFI PrintMe Cloud Service](#).
- Print directly from a Windows application. To do this, you must first install the PrintMe printer driver. See [Install the PrintMe printer driver](#) on page 59.
- When you upload or email a document to PrintMe, you receive an email confirmation that contains a unique document ID. You need this document ID to print, as described in the following procedures.
- Make sure that the printer is not printing or processing any files.
- PrintMe supports the following file types: PDF, XLS, DOC, PPT, GIF, JPG, TIFF, PICT, HTML, TXT, and PS. The maximum file size is 25MB.

Note: The Enable Native Document Conversion Using PrintMe option in Configure must be turned on to print DOC, PPT, and XLS files.

In particular, observe the following:

- The PrintMe feature on the Fiery ES requires a subscription to the PrintMe Cloud Service.
- For information or support related to the PrintMe Cloud Service, contact Electronics For Imaging at **printmesupport@efi.com**.
- PrintMe availability may vary, depending on the country or region.

Print a PrintMe document from a printer

You can print an uploaded document from the PrintMe Cloud Service to the printer.

- 1 On the printer control panel, press the Menu button.
- 2 Press Fiery.
- 3 Press PrintMe.
- 4 Type the Document ID and press Next.

Refer to the email confirmation for Document ID.

Jobs associated with the Document ID are displayed.

- 5 Select a job to print and then select the print settings:
 - Copies (number of copies)
 - Duplex, Tumble, or One Side
 - Color or B/W (black and white)
- 6 Press Print to print the job.
- 7 Press Delete to permanently remove all documents associated with the Document ID from PrintMe.

Install the PrintMe printer driver

You can print to the PrintMe cloud service just as you would print to any desktop printer with the PrintMe printer driver.

Note: The PrintMe printer driver is supported on client Windows computers that operate in a non-proxy network environment.

Install the PrintMe printer driver on a Windows client

You can install the PrintMe printer driver on a Windows client.

- 1 Go to <http://www.printme.com/home/index.html> and click Downloads from the PrintMe toolbar.
- 2 Under Desktops and Laptops, click Download for Windows to download the PrintMe printer driver.
- 3 Click EFI PrintMe Driver.exe, click Run, and follow the on-screen instructions.

If prompted, restart the computer.

- 4 To verify that the driver is set up correctly, click the Start button on the taskbar in Windows and select Devices and Printers (or Printers and Faxes or Printers).

The EFI PrintMe printer should be listed. If it is not, reinstall the printer driver.

After the PrintMe printer driver is installed, you can print to the PrintMe cloud service from most Windows applications.

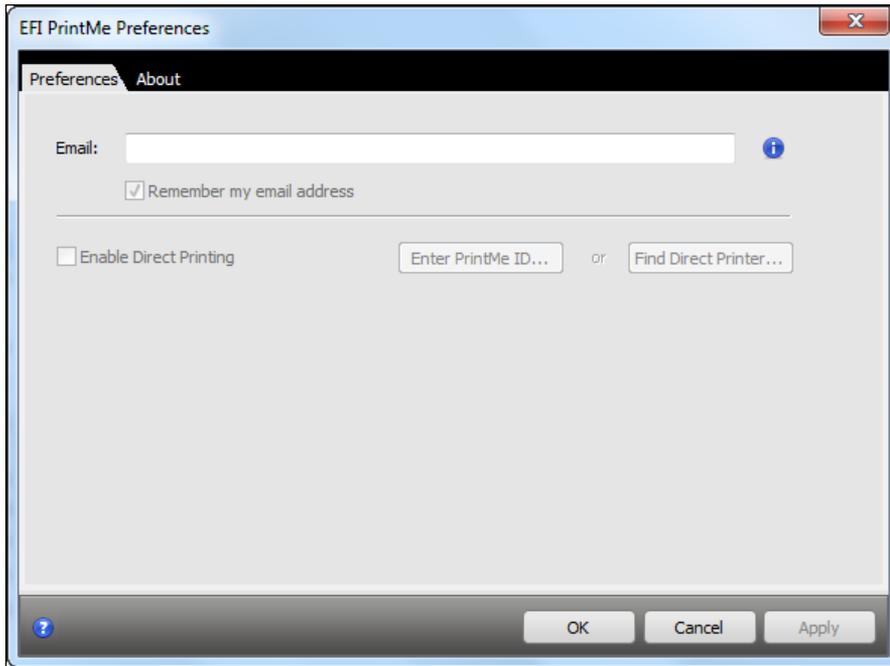
Note: To uninstall the PrintMe printer driver, open the Devices and Printers (or Printers and Faxes) folder or the Programs and Features tool in the Windows Control Panel and remove the EFI PrintMe Driver.

Print documents from Windows applications

You can print documents with the PrintMe printer driver.

- 1 In the Windows application, click File > Print.
- 2 Select EFI PrintMe from the printer pull-down menu.

- 3 Type your email address and click OK.



An email message containing the Document ID is sent to your email address.

Print with Fiery JDF

Fiery JDF allows submission of JDF jobs to a Fiery ES from applications that allow creation of JDF tickets. Use Configure to specify JDF settings and to view the Fiery JDF version, the JDF Device ID, and the JMF URL. For more information, see *Command WorkStation Help*.

This option is available as part of Fiery Productivity Package. For more information, see *Fiery Productivity Package*.

- 1 From Configure, choose Job Submission > JDF Settings.
- 2 Select Enable JDF.
- 3 If a virtual printer is configured for the Fiery ES, select one from the Use Job Settings from Virtual Printer option.
Note: Specify this option only if it applies to your specific workflow.
- 4 Specify a default print queue from Job Action.
- 5 Select Override JDF job with the above settings, if you want to override the settings specified in the JDF ticket.
- 6 Specify how you want the JDF jobs closed once they are printed.
- 7 Specify the items required for closing a JDF job. The items you select here must be filled out before the job can close automatically or manually.
- 8 Specify the network paths where the Fiery ES searches for common resources.
- 9 Click Save.

Web Services for Devices printing

Web Services for Devices (WSD) allows printing from Windows 7 and later computers, and Windows 8 or later based tablets.

The WSD option on the Fiery ES must be turned on in Setup. After Setup is complete, you can install the WSD printer driver for the Fiery ES.

For information about configuring the settings in Setup on the Fiery ES, see *Configuration and Setup*.

Install the WSD printer driver

You can install the WSD printer driver on Windows 7 and later computers, and Windows 8 or later based tablets.

- 1 Download the printer driver with WebTools.

For instructions on downloading the printer driver with WebTools, see [Download printer drivers with WebTools](#) on page 11.

- 2 In the Fiery Driver Installer dialog box, select the printer driver language and click Next.
- 3 Click Next in the Welcome to the InstallShield Wizard for Fiery Driver Installer dialog box.
- 4 Read the license agreement, click I accept the terms of the license agreement and click Next.
- 5 Select Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer.
- 6 Select the printer from the list of available printers and proceed to step 10.

Note: The WSD printer shows the Fiery ES with the printer in parentheses for the name of the printer.

If the printer is not listed, proceed to step 7.

- 7 Click The printer that I want isn't listed.
- 8 Click Add a printer using TCP/IP address or host name and click Next.
- 9 Select Web Services Device for Device type, type the IP address of the Fiery ES, and click Next.

Connection to the printer is initiated and the printer driver is installed.

- 10 Click Next and follow the on-screen instructions.

Do not share the printer and do not print a Test Page at this time.

Print Options

Print Options describes the Fiery ES printer driver, available print options, and where to set print options to print your jobs successfully.

About the Fiery ES printer driver

Windows and Mac OS computers communicate with the Fiery ES by means of a printer driver and a PostScript Printer Description (PPD) file. A PPD file contains information about the features and capabilities of a particular printer (for example, what paper sizes and media types are supported) and the Fiery ES.

A printer driver manages printing communication between your application and the printer. It interprets the instructions generated by the application, merges those instructions with printer-specific options you set, and then translates all information into Adobe PostScript, a language the printer understands. In other words, the printer driver writes a PostScript file based on your original file and the options you set from the Print dialog box.

The Fiery ES receives files from computers on the network, processes the files, and then sends them to the printer. For information about the specific print options for the Fiery ES, see [Print options and default settings](#) on page 63.

Set print options for the job

Print options give you access to the special features of your printer and the Fiery ES.

You can specify print options in these areas:

- **Setup**
Some settings are specified during the initial Fiery ES configuration by the administrator. For information about the current default server settings, contact the administrator or operator.
- **Applications**
With the printer drivers provided, you can specify job settings when you print a job.
- **Color Setup**
You can set the default CMYK Source, CMYK rendering intent, Separate RGB/Lab to CMYK source, RGB Source, RGB rendering intent, Spot color matching, Gray source, Gray rendering intent, Black text and graphics, Black overprint (for pure black) and Output profile settings. (See *Color Printing*.)

- **Fiery Hot Folders**

You can assign a group of print options to a Hot Folder. When you specify print options for a Hot Folder, the print options are assigned to all jobs sent through that Hot Folder. These print options override any default options.

For information, see *Fiery Hot Folders Help*.

- **Overrides in the Job Properties window of Command WorkStation**

To change job settings from Command WorkStation, double-click a job to display the Job Properties window.

For more information, see *Command WorkStation Help*.

Print option override hierarchy

Print option settings that were specified in the printer driver can be overridden either in the Held, Printed or Archived queue of Command WorkStation.

Note: You can use inline editing in the Job Summary pane as another way to override job properties.

The override hierarchy is as follows:

- Settings from the user's printer driver override the Fiery ES Setup settings.
- Settings assigned to Fiery Hot Folders override the user's printer driver settings.
- Settings made from the job management tools (Job Properties window of Command WorkStation) override the user's printer driver settings.

Print options and default settings

You can use the printer driver interface to configure a particular print option to print a job. If you choose not to configure the print option, the Fiery ES prints the job with the default setting.

For the default settings of the Fiery ES, as set in the Default settings window (Server > Set Defaults in Command WorkStation), choosing Default results in the Fiery ES printing the job with the current server defaults or previously saved settings.

For options that cannot be configured in Setup, the Fiery ES prints the job with a preconfigured Factory Default setting. When you select the printer driver for North America, the default Document size is Letter or for International, the default Document size is A4.

To determine the current Setup defaults, print the Configuration page from Command WorkStation. (See *Command WorkStation Help*.)

Note: A job uses the Fiery ES default settings (unless otherwise specified) at the time it is processed for printing, not at the time it is sent to the Fiery ES Hold queue.

The print options are organized according to the printer driver icons (tabs).

Job Info options

The Job Info tab shows all information about the job, including user information that may be required for user authentication and job handling.

Copies

The maximum number of copies is 9999.

The maximum number of jobs in the Printing queue and Archived queue is 9999.

Note: The Copies print option is grayed out and cannot be changed from the Printing Preferences dialog box when Full Properties is clicked in the Mac OS printer driver. You can specify the number of copies in the application or Mac OS Print dialog box.

Print Range

The Print Range print option allows you to specify the page range or odd/even pages to print.

For variable data printing jobs, a range of Records is selected for printing. For imposed variable data printing jobs, a range of Records and Sheets is printed.

For imposed jobs, a range of Sheets is printed.

Note: If you print a page range within a duplex job and the specified range begins on an even-numbered page, the page range that is actually printed begins on the page before the specified range. The system automatically changes the page range to preserve the duplex job pagination.

This option is only accessible from the Job Properties window in Command WorkStation.

Accounting: Enable job tracking

The Enable job tracking print option, when selected, turns on job tracking.

To display the job notes and instructions at print time for the job, select Allow entry of account information.

To use the last job account information for the print job, select Show last entered account information.

To save the last entered job account information in the job notes, select Use last entered account information.

This option is not available from the Job Properties window of Command WorkStation.

Account track

Select the Account track check box to assign the Department name and Account password for a print job.

Note: To use this option, you must configure it on the printer.

Account track: Department name

Specify an account identification value for the Department name (up to 8 alphanumeric characters).

Note: To use this option, you must configure Account track on the printer.

Account track: Account password

Specify the Account password for a job (up to 64 alphanumeric characters).

Note: To use this option, you must configure Account track on the printer.

Destination: Box number

Specify a Box number when using the Copier stored print option.

The Fiery ES sends the print job to the hard disk drive on the printer specified by the Box number.

The Box number is available from 1 to 999999999.

Note: If you specify the reserved number as 0, the printer cancels the job.

For more information, see the documentation that accompanies your printer.

Destination: Copier stored print

The Copier stored print option allows you to store a print job on the hard disk drive of the printer.

Do one of the following:

- Select Off to send the image data as a normal print job.
- Select HDD stored to store the print job on the hard disk drive of the printer.
- Select HDD stored and print to store the print job on the hard disk drive of the printer and to print the job.

The hard disk drive (HDD) must be installed in the printer to select one of the HDD options.

For more information, see the documentation that accompanies your printer.

Job notes: Instructions

The Instructions print option allows you to specify instructions for the operator about the job.

This field accepts alphanumeric and special characters but does have a maximum limit.

Job notes: Notes 1/Notes 2

The Notes print option allows you to specify information about the job.

This field accepts alphanumeric and special characters but does have a maximum limit.

Note: If you enter < or = as the first character, the characters may not be printed in the Job Log, or the application in use may shut down.

Job notes: Secure print

The Secure print print option should be used to print sensitive or confidential documents.

Specify an arbitrary password and re-enter it when you are present at the printer.

Print queue action

Select the job action associated with a published queue.

Select Print to send the file directly to printing.

Select Print and hold to save the raster file after printing.

Select Process and hold to process, but not print a job.

Select Hold to spool the job until the operator takes further action. Held jobs can exist in a preprocessed or processed state.

Select Print and delete to queue a job to be processed, printed, and then deleted. This action ensures that the printed job is not saved to the Printed list, which is often required for secure printing.

Note: This option is invalid if your job is sent to the Direct connection.

Proof print

Select the Proof print check box to print a single copy of a job(s) to verify output.

When Proof print is selected, it stores a print job and prints only one copy. The remaining copies print after you enter information from the printer control panel.

This function is available only when you print multiple-copies.

To print the document, release the held document from the printer control panel.

For information, see the documentation that accompanies your printer.

Reporting: Control Bar

The Control Bar feature allows you to add a static color bar and dynamic job information to each printed page at a user-defined location.

The available settings are:

- Off does not print a control bar for the job.
- Fiery is the default control bar that provides a color bar and dynamic job information for the job.

If you require your own control bar, you can create one by defining custom values in Control Bar under Color Setup in Device Center of Command WorkStation.

This option is available as part of Fiery Productivity Package. For more information, see *Fiery Productivity Package*.

Printer's default reflects the setting specified in Color Setup in Command WorkStation.

Reporting: Postflight

The Postflight print option is a diagnostic tool that allows you to analyze how data is processed by the Fiery ES. You can choose to print an analytical report for a job.

This option is available as part of the Fiery Productivity Package. For more information, see *Fiery Productivity Package*.

Server authentication: Authentication server name

Specify the Authentication server name for the User Authentication Server (up to 32 byte characters).

Note: To use this option, you must configure User Authentication Server on the printer.

For more information, see the documentation that accompanies your printer.

Server authentication: Project code

Specify the Project code for the User Authentication Server (up to 32 alphanumeric characters).

Server authentication: Project password

Specify the Project password for the User Authentication Server (up to 64 alphanumeric characters).

User authentication: I'm a Guest

The I'm a Guest print option, when selected, allows guest printing.

Guest printing must be turned on at the Fiery ES.

In Command WorkStation, the management of jobs is determined by how you log on to the Fiery ES.

When the printer is accessible to public users (unregistered users), selecting this option enables you to execute printing without entering the user name and password.

For more information about the user authentication feature on the printer, see the documentation that accompanies your printer.

User authentication: Password

If user authentication is configured on the Fiery ES, specify your user Password to print a job. Type your local password or domain password for user authentication.

If user authentication is configured on the printer, type your local password or domain password to print a job. For more information about the user authentication feature on the printer, see the documentation that accompanies your printer.

User authentication: User name

If user authentication is configured on the Fiery ES, specify your User name to print a job. Type your user name or domain\user name for user authentication.

If user authentication is configured on the printer, type your user name or domain\user name to print a job. For more information about the user authentication feature on the printer, see the documentation that accompanies your printer.

User authentication: Use Windows Login

If you are logged on to your Windows computer, select Use Windows Login for user authentication. This option appears when you log on to your domain on your Windows computer.

For more information, see *Configuration and Setup*.

Media options

The Media tab shows attributes and sources of paper to print and insert.

Document size

The Document size print option is the page size defined in your application's Print setup (or Page setup) dialog box.

When printing one document page per sheet of paper, document size is usually the same as output paper size. However, document size may differ when printing booklets or imposing multiple document pages on a single sheet.

Document size may also differ from output paper size when you use the Scale or Scale to fit options, in which case the document page size is scaled at a given percent to fit a certain paper size.

To assign document size, do one of the following:

- Select the size from the available list.
- Click Custom to select a non-standard paper size.

Note: The Document size option is grayed out and cannot be changed from the Mac OS printer driver. You can specify the document size with the Paper size option from the Mac OS printer driver.

Cover options: Back cover

Specify a back cover to print at the end of the print job.

Do one of the following:

- Specify None to print the job without a back cover.
- Specify Blank to print a blank back cover.
- Specify Printed to print on the back cover.

When creating a Saddle Stitch booklet, use the Booklet Maker Define Cover option.

Cover options: Back cover tray

Specify the paper tray to use for the back cover.

Cover options: Front cover

Specify a front cover to print at the beginning of the print job.

Do one of the following:

- Specify None to print the job without a front cover.
- Specify Blank to print a blank front cover.
- Specify Printed to print on the front cover.

When creating a Saddle Stitch booklet, use the Booklet Maker Define Cover option.

Cover options: Front cover tray

Specify the paper tray to use for the front cover.

Cover options: PI back cover tray

Specify the PI (Post Inserter) back cover tray for the print job.

Cover options: PI front cover tray

Specify the PI (Post Inserter) front cover tray for the print job.

Output paper size

Output paper size defines the size of the sheet of paper on which your job prints. It is the size of the physical sheet of paper in the printer tray.

To assign paper size, do one of the following:

- Select the size from the available list.
- Click Custom to select a non-standard paper size.
- Select Same as document size to print one document page per sheet of paper.

Paper tray

Use the Paper tray print option to specify the paper tray that contains the paper to use for your print job.

Paper tray allows you to select a specific tray for your job. If you select the Auto tray select setting, the printer prints from any tray containing the paper size necessary for the job. This setting also allows the printer to automatically switch between trays, if the current tray becomes empty, while continuing to print.

If you turn on the Tray alignment print option, then Paper tray cannot be set to Auto tray select.

For information about setting your choice of media in one of the trays, see the documentation that accompanies the printer.

Paper type

The Paper type print option is used to specify the type of paper used for your print job.

For information about media types and paper specifications, see the documentation that accompanies the printer.

Slip sheets: Transparency interleaving

The Transparency interleaving print option allows you to print multiple transparency sheets separated by slip sheets.

Select Off to not print transparency sheets.

Select On to print multiple transparency sheets separated by blank, plain paper pages.

Note: This option is supported with Letter or A4 size plain paper or transparencies only.

Slip sheets: Interleave tray

Select an input tray for transparency interleaving.

Tray alignment

The Tray alignment print option should be selected when you need to adjust the image on the page to achieve alignment on both sides of a page when printing duplex.

For more information, see *Command WorkStation Help*.

Mixed media

The Mixed media print option allows you to specify different media types, paper sizes, and paper source to use within a print job.

For more information, see printer driver help.

For information about accessing and using Mixed media, see *Command WorkStation Help*. Features specific to the Fiery ES are described in *Utilities*.

Layout options

The Layout tab defines the imposition of the print job and the booklet process on the media/sheet, except for positioning that compensates for finishing options, for example, Tray alignment.

The printer driver has the following layout modes:

- Normal is used for printing standard documents, from 1 to 16 document pages per sheet. (See [Normal layout options](#) on page 71.)
- Gangup is used for speed printing imposition modes. (See [Gangup layout options](#) on page 73.)
- Booklet is used for printing documents in booklet layout. (See [Booklet options in the printer driver and Job Properties](#) on page 74.)
- Impose is used for imposition layouts for custom printing, binding, and trimming. (See [Impose layout options](#) on page 77.)

Normal layout options

Normal layout options are used for printing standard documents, from 1 to 16 document pages per sheet.

Duplex

The Duplex print option allows you to print a job with duplex (double-sided) pages.

Select Off for single-sided printing.

Specify Right & left binding or Top binding for duplex (double-sided) printing by specifying the orientation of printed images.

Note: Two-sided tab (index) printing of 9x11 paper size is not supported.

For more information, see [Print Duplex \(double-sided\) pages](#) on page 103.

Mirror

The Mirror print option, when selected, prints the mirror image of the job.

This option is not available from the Mac OS printer driver and the Job Properties window of Command WorkStation.

Orientation override

The Orientation Override print option is used with jobs that do not have an orientation or that have incorrect orientation.

It specifies the orientation to use for finishing settings (for example, stapling) that interact with orientation and for flowing pages on N-up layouts. In some cases, the orientation of a job may be correct in print, but incorrect in preview.

This option is accessible only from the Job Properties window of Command WorkStation.

Orientation

The Orientation print option allows you to specify Portrait or Landscape page orientation for the document.

This option is not available from the Mac OS printer driver and the Job Properties window of Command WorkStation.

N-up option: Page Order

Specify the layout direction when the Pages per Sheet option is set to 2-up or greater.

N-up option: Pages per Sheet

Specify the number of document pages per sheet of paper for your print job.

This option cannot be used with the Create master or Use master options.

Note: This option is invalid if your job is sent to the Direct connection.

N-up option: Print border

Select to turn on Print border to print borders around each page in your print job.

Rotate 180

The Rotate 180 print option, when selected, rotates the pages of a job 180 degrees.

Scale to fit

The Scale to fit option allows you to specify whether to scale your job to fit to a paper size. When using the Scale to fit option, you cannot use the manual Scale option.

The Scale to fit option allows you to scale a job to a paper size different from the document size. When you turn on this option, the image is increased or reduced in size to fit the imageable area of the paper size you select from the Paper size menu. The document size is scaled to the printable imageable area of the paper for edge-to-edge printing. When you turn off this option, the original document size is printed without any scaling, even if you select a larger paper size.

Scale to fit option	Document size - Letter	Output paper size - 11x17
Scale to fit turned on		
Scale to fit turned off		

Scale

Specify an increase or decrease in the scale of your print job. When using the manual Scale option, you cannot specify Scale to fit.

The operator can specify a scaling override in Command WorkStation, but the override is applied to any scaling value already set in the active job. For example, if a user sends a job with a scaling value of 50% and the operator specifies a Scale override of 300%, the job is printed at 150% of the original document size, that is, 50% of 300%.

Gangup layout options

Gangup layout options are used for speed printing imposition modes.

Note: The Gang-up feature is not valid if your job is sent to the Direct connection.

Gangup

Select Gangup to specify options for speed printing imposition modes.

Gang-up type

Gangup booklet has two types used for speed printing imposition: Step & repeat and Cut & stack.

Select Step & repeat to speed print a job by printing two document pages on each sheet. When the printed sheets are cut in half, the result is two complete sets of the same document.

Select Cut & stack to speed print a job by printing two document pages side by side. When the printed sheets are cut in half and stacked together, the result is one complete set of the document (in faster printing time).

For more information, see [Gang-up printing](#) on page 101.

Page Alignment: Duplex

The Page Alignment: Duplex print option allows you to select the duplex (double-sided) setting to specify the orientation of printed images for gang-up printing.

Select Off for single-sided printing.

Specify Right & left binding for duplex (double-sided) printing to specify the orientation of printed images.

For more information, see [Print Duplex \(double-sided\) pages](#) on page 103.

Page Alignment: Increase gutter by

Increase gutter by controls the amount of space between adjacent pages on a sheet to adjust for trimming or other finishing options.

You can specify the gutter value from -1.969 to 1.969 inch in 0.001 inch increments (-50.0 to 50.0 mm in 0.1 mm increments).

Specify a positive value to increase the amount of blank space between adjacent pages.

Specify a negative value to decrease the amount of blank space between adjacent pages.

For more information, see *Booklet Maker Help*.

Paper size

The Paper size print option defines the size of the sheet of paper on which your job prints. It is the size of the physical sheet of paper.

To assign paper size, select one of the following:

- Select the size from the available list.
- Select Custom Paper Size to select a non-standard paper size.
- Select Same as document size to print on a sheet of paper the same size as the original document page size.

For information about Document size and Paper size, see [Document size and Paper size](#) on page 99.

For information about printing custom page sizes, see [Defining and printing custom page sizes](#) on page 98.

Paper Size: Shrink to fit

The Shrink to fit print option, when selected, automatically scales down or reduces the document page size to fit the imageable area of the selected paper size specified from the Paper Size menu. Shrink to fit does not scale up or enlarge.

Select one of the following settings:

- Off - prints the page contents at 100%.
- Sheet size - shrinks the page contents to fit the sheet size.
- Imageable area - shrinks the page contents to fit the imageable area.

Booklet options in the printer driver and Job Properties

Booklet layout options are used for printing documents in booklet layout.

The Booklet Maker print options accessible from the printer driver. For the Booklet Maker print options accessible from Command WorkStation Job Properties, see [Booklet Maker in the printer driver and Command WorkStation Job Properties](#) on page 94.

Note: The Booklet Maker feature is not valid if your job is sent to the Direct connection.

You can use the Booklet Maker Wizard to specify booklet options by clicking Launch Wizard.

Booklet

Select Booklet to specify options for printing documents in Booklet layout.

Click Launch Wizard to specify how to arrange the pages of the job in special layouts for folding or cutting after printing.

Booklet Type

Booklet Type is a combination of binding method, which determines how the signatures of the booklet are folded and imposed, and binding edge, which determines the location of the spine of the booklet.

For information about Booklet printing, see *Booklet Maker Help*.

Cover: Back cover

When Front & Back Separately is selected for the Cover: Content input print option, use the Back cover option to define how the content of the back cover is printed.

Select Print on outside to print only on the outside of the back cover (the inside of the back cover is blank).

Select Print on inside to print only on the inside of the back cover (the outside of the back cover is blank).

Select Print on both sides to print on both the inside and outside of the back cover.

Select Do not print if you do not want any content printed on the back cover.

When you add a cover, blank pages may be inserted, depending on the allocation of pages to signatures in the job. For more information, see *Booklet Maker Help*.

Cover: Content input

The Content input print option provides cover type settings for your Saddle booklet.

Select Front & Back Separately to include cover content (individual pages in your document) as part of your booklet print job.

Select Pre-Printed (use insert) to insert a pre-printed cover that is added to the body pages from an inserter tray.

For more information, see *Booklet Maker Help*.

Cover: Define Cover (for Saddle books only)

Click Define Cover to specify the cover options.

Cover: Front cover

When Front & Back Separately is selected, use the Front cover option to define how the content of the front cover is printed.

Select Print on outside to print only on the outside of the front cover (the inside of the front cover is blank).

Select Print on inside to print only on the inside of the front cover (the outside of the front cover is blank).

Select Print on both sides to print on both the inside and outside of the front cover.

Select Do not print if you do not want any content printed on the front cover.

When you add a cover, blank pages may be inserted, depending on the allocation of pages to signatures. For more information, see *Booklet Maker Help*.

Page Alignment: Centering adjustment

Centering adjustment positions page content in relation to the center of one-half the paper size or the spine, the center of the sheet where the fold occurs.

At the center positions page content in the center of one-half the specified paper size.

At the spine aligns page content with the spine or center fold of your booklet.

For more information, see *Booklet Maker Help*.

Page Alignment: Compensate creep

Compensate creep adjusts the position of the page content to counteract the shift that occurs when sheets are folded and combined to create Saddle and Nested Saddle booklets.

Select Plain when printing Saddle or Nested Saddle booklets with a large number of pages.

Select Thick when printing Saddle or Nested Saddle booklets on heavyweight paper.

For information about printing booklets, see *Booklet Maker Help*.

Page Alignment: Increase gutter by

Increase gutter by controls the amount of space between adjacent pages on a sheet to adjust for trimming or other finishing options.

You can specify the gutter value from -1.969 to 1.969 inch in 0.001 inch increments (-50.0 to 50.0 mm in 0.1 mm increments).

Specify a positive value to increase the amount of blank space between adjacent pages.

Specify a negative value to decrease the amount of blank space between adjacent pages.

For more information, see *Booklet Maker Help*.

Paper Size: Paper Size for 2-up

The Paper Size for 2-up print option defines the size of the sheet of paper (unfolded) on which a booklet is printed. It is the size of the physical sheet of paper.

To assign a paper size for a booklet, select one of the following:

- Select the size from the available list.
- Select Custom Paper Size to select a non-standard paper size.
- Select Same as document size to print on a sheet of paper the same size as the original document page size.

For information about Document size and Paper size, see [Document size and Paper size](#) on page 99.

For information about printing custom page sizes, see [Defining and printing custom page sizes](#) on page 98.

For more information about printing booklets, see *Booklet Maker Help*.

Paper Size: Shrink to fit

The Shrink to fit print option, when selected, automatically scales down or reduces the document page size to fit the imageable area of the selected paper size specified from the Paper Size menu. Shrink to fit does not scale up or enlarge.

Select one of the following settings:

- Off - prints the page contents at 100%.
- Sheet size - shrinks the page contents to fit the sheet size.
- Imageable area - shrinks the page contents to fit the imageable area.

Subset Size: Number of sheets in a subset (saddle) (for Nested Saddle books only)

When Nested Saddle is selected for booklet type, use the Number of sheets in a subset (saddle) print option to specify the number of sheets in each subset.

Impose layout options

Fiery Impose provides several pre-defined imposition templates used for custom printing, binding, and trimming.

Impose is an option on the Fiery ES.

The Impose option is only accessible from Command WorkStation Job Properties.

For more information, see *Command WorkStation Help*.

Impose

Select Impose to specify an imposition layout for a job.

Templates

Specify an imposition layout template for a job.

The available templates are as follows:

- Normal: Default Template and 1-up full bleed
- Booklet: 2-up perfect, 2-up saddle, and 4-up head to head
- Gangup: 3-up trifold brochure, 4-up gate fold, and 4-up z fold

Edit Impose Template

You can edit the imposition template in Fiery Impose.

Click Edit Impose Template to open a template in Fiery Impose for editing.

For information about Impose, see *Utilities*. For information about using Impose, see *Command WorkStation Help*.

Color options

The Color tab shows color settings and additional features (when turned on).

Color mode

Select the color mode for the current print job.

Specify the color mode for the print job by doing one of the following:

- Select CMYK for a color document.
- Select Grayscale for a grayscale or black-and-white document.

Calibration

Calibration shows the last date and time the calibration was updated for the printer.

Output profile

The Default output profile print option specifies the output profile used to process a job. Color data in a print job is converted to the color space of the printer, which is described by the output profile.

For more information, see *Color Printing*.

Color input options

RGB source

The RGB source print option allows you to specify a source color space definition for printing RGB images, graphics, and text.

For more information, see *Color Printing*.

Use RGB embedded profiles

When the Use RGB embedded profiles option is selected, the Fiery ES ignores the RGB Source option and uses the RGB profile embedded in the print job as the RGB source profile.

For more information, see *Color Printing*.

RGB rendering intent

Specify a RGB rendering intent for the print job.

Specify a default CRD (color rendering dictionary) for color conversion when printing RGB images, graphics, and text.

Do one of the following:

- Select Presentation to print files with artwork, graphics, and text. The result is similar to Photographic, with well-rendered in-gamut colors, such as flesh tones, and more saturated colors.
- Select Photographic to print photographs, including scanned and digital camera images. The result is less saturated than Presentation style.
- Select Relative Colorimetric when color matching is important, but you also want to print white as paper white. The white point transformation eliminates borders between blank spaces and white objects.
- Select Absolute Colorimetric when exact colors are required and visible borders are not distracting. There is no white point transformation.

Note: If you experience tone reproduction problems, set this option to Photographic.

For more information, see *Color Printing*.

Print RGB gray using black only

The Print RGB gray using black only print option provides settings to print an RGB grayscale job using black instead of process black.

This option renders the selected object types (Text/Graphics or Text/Graphics/Images) in grayscale using K-only black. (Graphics refer to vector graphics; Images refer to raster images.)

This option is designed to use black efficiently, by using only black (rather than four-color process black). (See *Color Printing*).

CMYK source

The CMYK source print option specifies the simulation profile for the print job.

For more information, see *Color Printing*.

Use CMYK embedded profiles

When the Use CMYK embedded profiles option is selected, the Fiery ES ignores the CMYK source option and uses the CMYK profile embedded in the print job as the CMYK source profile.

For more information, see *Color Printing*.

CMYK rendering intent

The CMYK rendering intent print option allows you to specify a default CRD (color rendering dictionary) for color conversion when printing CMYK images, graphics, and text.

Do one of the following:

- Select Relative Colorimetric when color matching is important, but you also want to print white as paper white. The white point transformation eliminates borders between blank spaces and white objects.
- Select Photographic to print photographs, including scanned and digital camera images. The result is less saturated than Presentation style.
- Select Absolute Colorimetric when exact colors are required and visible borders are not distracting. There is no white point transformation.
- Select Presentation to print files with artwork, graphics, and text. The result is similar to Photographic, with well-rendered in-gamut colors, such as flesh tones, and more saturated colors.
- Select Pure primaries to use one-dimensional transfer curves to adjust density output of individual color channels.

Note: If you experience tone reproduction problems, set this option to Photographic.

For more information, see *Color Printing*.

Black point compensation

The Black point compensation option lets you control the output quality of shadow areas for CMYK source colors.

Use Black point compensation to enhance details in shadows when the CMYK source space is larger than the gamut of the printer. In proofing applications, when the CMYK source space is smaller than the gamut of the printer, do not use this option.

Note: For RGB source colors, black point compensation is always applied.

Black point compensation works by scaling the source colors so that the darkest point in the source profile maps to the darkest point in the output profile.

For more information, see *Color Printing*.

Print CMYK gray using black only

The Print CMYK gray using black only print option provides settings to print a CMYK grayscale job using black instead of process black.

This option renders the selected object types (Text/Graphics or Text/Graphics/Images) in grayscale using K-only black. (Graphics refer to vector graphics; Images refer to raster images.)

This option is designed to use black efficiently, by using only black (rather than four-color process black). (See *Color Printing*).

Grayscale source

The Grayscale source print option defines the source color space for all grayscale objects.

Use Gray embedded profiles

When the Use Gray embedded profiles option is selected, the Fiery ES ignores the Grayscale source option and uses the Gray profile embedded in the print job as the Grayscale source profile.

For more information, see *Color Printing*.

Grayscale rendering intent

The Grayscale rendering intent print option allows you to specify a default CRD (color rendering dictionary) for color conversion when printing grayscale images, graphics, and text.

Do one of the following:

- Select Photographic to print photographs, including scanned and digital camera images. The result is less saturated than Presentation style.
- Select Presentation to print files with artwork, graphics, and text. The result is similar to Photographic, with well-rendered in-gamut colors, such as flesh tones, and more saturated colors.

- Select Absolute Colorimetric when exact colors are required and visible borders are not distracting. There is no white point transformation.
- Select Relative Colorimetric when color matching is important, but you also want to print white as paper white. The white point transformation eliminates borders between blank spaces and white objects.

Note: If you experience tone reproduction problems, set this option to Photographic.

For more information, see *Color Printing*.

Print gray using black only

The Print gray using black only print option provides settings to print a grayscale job using black instead of process black.

This option renders the selected object types (Text/Graphics or Text/Graphics/Images) in grayscale using K-only black. (Graphics refer to vector graphics; Images refer to raster images.)

This option is designed to use black efficiently, by using only black (rather than four-color process black). (See *Color Printing*).

Spot color matching

Clear the Spot color matching check box to print specified PANTONE colors in your job using the alternate color space and values for the spot color specified in the source application.

Select to activate the PANTONE Lookup Table. The Fiery ES uses a built-in table to generate the closest CMYK matches of spot colors. (See *Color Printing*).

Use spot group

The Use spot group print option uses the default spot color group for the print job.

Color settings options

Auto trapping

Trapping is a technique to print some objects slightly larger or smaller than specified in an application, in order to prevent white edges around the objects.

These white edges, or “halos,” can be caused by factors such as misregistration, the physical properties of the inks, and the stiffness of the media. The Auto trapping feature provides you with advanced trapping settings and gives you full control over their values.

Select this option if the job should automatically reduce white gaps for text and graphics.

Turning on this option may result in graphics or text surrounded with borders.

For more information, see *Color Printing*.

This option is available as part of Fiery Productivity Package. For more information, see *Fiery Productivity Package*.

Auto Trapping customization feature is available as part of Fiery Productivity Package. For more information, see *Fiery Productivity Package*.

Black overprint (for pure black)

The Black overprint (for pure black) print option provides settings for text or text/graphics to overprint in the job.

Do one of the following:

- Select Off to use conventional processing by knocking out. May produce white halos around objects.
- Select Text to overprint black text.
- Select Text/Graphics to overprint black text and graphics.

For more information, see *Color Printing*.

Black text and graphics

The Black text and graphics print option specifies how to print black text and graphics in the print job.

Do one of the following:

- Select Normal to print black text and graphics as a four-color black using C, M, Y, and K, and to use normal PostScript rendering.
- Select Pure Black On to print black text and graphics as a one-color black, using black only.
- Select Rich Black On to print black text and graphics as richer looking black, by layering a small amount of Cyan underneath the black to make the black even darker.

This option is automatically set to Pure Black On if the Black overprint (for pure black) option is set to Text or Text/Graphics. (See *Color Printing*.)

Combine separations

You can print the color separations in the job as a single page or as four individual pages.

When printing separations from supported desktop publishing applications, do one of the following:

- Select the Combine separations check box to combine separations on a single page.
- Clear the check box to view separations as individual black-and-white pages, each representing one color plate.

For more information, see *Color Printing*.

Composite overprint

Design applications are typically set to knock out objects.

To overprint, you must first change the settings in the *source* application. When the Composite overprint option is turned on, the overprinting attribute specified in the source application takes place, provided the output is in composite mode (not printed in separations) and/or is printed with CMYK or Grayscale color mode. (See *Color Printing*).

Select this option to overprint objects that are specified in the source PostScript or PDF file.

ImageViewer Curves

The ImageViewer Curves print option lets you apply color curve edits from ImageViewer that have been saved on the server as a preset.

ImageViewer in Command WorkStation can be used to edit the CMYK curves of a job on the Fiery ES. These curve edits can be saved as a preset and applied to other jobs. Use the ImageViewer Curves option to select a preset for your job.

Factory-supplied curve edits apply some typical color corrections:

- Lighter highlights
- Midtone boost
- No correction
- Shadow detail
- Reduce C (cyan) cast
- Reduce M (magenta) cast
- Reduce Y (yellow) cast

After the job is processed, the edits become part of the job and are no longer visible as edits when you view the job in ImageViewer.

For more information, see *Color Printing*.

Optimize RGB transparency

You can use the Optimize RGB transparency option to achieve correct color output for areas of overlapping transparent RGB or Lab colors (such as a drop shadow) in a PDF job.

Turn on to achieve correct color output for areas of overlapping transparent RGB or Lab colors (such as a drop shadow) in a PDF job.

If you turn on Optimize RGB Transparency, the Fiery ES uses the correct RGB source profile and rendering intent when converting the overlapping RGB colors to CMYK during the PDF-to-PostScript conversion. If you turn off Optimize RGB Transparency, the area of overlapping colors might print with incorrect color or undesirable artifacts.

This option is only accessible from the Job Properties window of Command WorkStation, Fiery Hot Folders, and Virtual Printers. (See *Color Printing*).

Paper simulation

Select the Paper simulation check box to adjust the color according to the shade of the paper stock specified in the selected CMYK/Grayscale source profile.

This option is available as part of Fiery Productivity Package. For more information, see *Fiery Productivity Package*.

Separate RGB/Lab to CMYK source

Select the Separate RGB/Lab to CMYK source option for RGB jobs to simulate an output printer other than the printer to which you are printing.

For more information, see *Color Printing*.

Substitute colors

The Substitute colors print option, when selected, uses the substitute color values defined in Spot-On.

For more information, see *Color Printing*.

Image options

The Image tab shows all image quality settings supported by the connected Fiery ES and printer.

For information about options specified in Setup, see *Configuration and Setup*.

Brightness

The Brightness print option allows you to specify the image brightness for the print job.

Select 85% lightest for a substantially lighter image, 115% darkest for a substantially darker image, or one of the settings in between.

Edge enhancement

When the Edge enhancement print option is set to On, it smooths the edges of text and graphics and reduces the appearance of jagged edges.

Gloss print

Select the Gloss print check box to gloss the print job like a photograph.

This feature is available when the Paper type option is set to Plain paper and the Duplex option is set to Off.

Image enhance: Apply image enhancement

The Apply image enhancement option, when selected, applies photo enhancement to the job.

The supported file formats are PDF, PS, TIFF, and EPS.

This option is not valid for images under 72 dpi. Also, it is not applied to pages with a large number of images.

For more information, see [Image Enhance](#) on page 102.

Image enhance: Image enhancement range

Specify all pages, specific page(s), or sheets of the document to apply photo finishing enhancement.

Image smoothing

Select the Image smoothing option to minimize grainy output when printing low-resolution (up to 300 dpi) images.

This option is valid for images less than or equal to 150 dpi when the Resolution option is set to 600 dpi, and for images less than or equal to 300 dpi when the Resolution option is set to 1200 dpi. This option improves graphic and image types of gradients.

Image quality

The Image quality print option allows you to specify the type of image quality for the job.

This option affects the fineness of images in the job; there is a trade-off with processing speed.

Choose one of the following for the print job:

- Normal - to print quality images.
- Best - to print the highest quality for text and images.

Resolution

The Resolution print option allows you to specify the resolution of the print job (specified in dots-per-inch).

Note: Calibration is affected by the resolution setting. When you create a custom calibration setting, be sure the resolution setting is the same setting that is used in jobs that are printed with the calibration setting. For more information, see *Color Printing*.

Screen pattern

Specify a halftone screen pattern for the print job.

Select one of the following:

- Gradation priority for gradation-optimized halftone screening.
- Resolution priority for resolution-optimized halftone screening.
- High-resolution priority for high resolution-optimized halftone screening.

The Screen pattern settings are affected by the resolution. The screens used at 600 dpi are generally smoother in gradation than those used at 1200 dpi. Set the Resolution print option to 600 dpi if your job contains images and gradations. Set the Resolution print option to 1200 dpi if your job contains mostly line art and text.

Use maximum printer density

The Use maximum printer density option is designed to create solid, saturated colors. It is typically used to print text and graphics, not photographic images.

Select this option to print 100% C, M, Y (or R, G, B) at the maximum density that the printer is capable of printing, regardless of calibration. C, M, Y (or R, G, B) values less than 100% still print at the calibrated density value.

For best results printing CMYK color, set CMYK Source to Bypass conversion. For best results printing RGB color, make sure the Use RGB embedded profiles option is selected.

Finishing options

The Finishing tab shows print options related only to finishing equipment on the printer, and also image shifting to compensate for finishing options.

These options override settings in Fiery ES Printer Setup but can be changed from Command WorkStation.

Delivery Option: Collate

The Collate print option allows you to specify how to output multiple-page/multiple-copy jobs.

- Collate: Copies of a complete job are sorted as 1-N, 1-N.
- Uncollate: Copies of a complete job are sorted as 1,1, 2,2, 3,3.
- Offset collate: Copies of a complete job are sorted as 1-N, 1-N with offset stacking.
- Offset uncollate: Copies of a complete job are sorted as 1,1, 2,2, 3,3 with offset stacking.

Note: This option is invalid if your job is sent to the Direct connection.

Note: The collation of Mixed Media and Variable Data Printing (VDP) jobs is handled differently. For Mixed Media jobs, copies of a complete job are sorted according to finishing set. For VDP jobs, copies of a complete job are sorted per record.

For information about VDP, see *Variable Data Printing*.

For information about Mixed Media, see *Utilities*.

Delivery option: Output tray

The Output tray print option allows you to specify the output tray for the job.

Fold

Specify a fold style for the print job.

For more information, [Fold options](#) on page 101.

Fold: Tri-fold type

The Tri-fold type print option allows you to specify the number of pages to be tri-folded at a time.

The printer can tri-fold all pages together, each page one-by-one, or a specific number of pages.

Note: This option is available when Tri-fold is selected for the Fold option.

Fold: Tri-fold number

The Tri-fold number print option allows you to specify the number of pages to be tri-folded.

Note: This option is available when the Tri-fold type option is set to Page unit.

Image shift

The Image shift print option check box, when selected, adjusts an image for duplex printing by shifting the image horizontally, in the direction of paper travel, relative to the leading edge.

This option affects the offsetting of the image for the entire job, not on a per-page-basis. However, you can specify alignment settings for the front (odd) and back (even) pages.

Image Shift settings are not available from inside Mixed Media.

Image Shift is not supported for Booklet Maker and Gang-up printing.

For more information, see printer driver help.

Punch: Punch edge

The Punch edge print option allows you to specify the location of punched holes.

To use this option, you must install a finisher with hole punching functionality.

For information about installing finishers and other installable options, see printer driver help.

Punch: Punch holes

The Punch holes print option allows you to specify the number of holes to punch for your job.

To use this option, you must install a finisher with hole punching functionality.

For information about installing finishers and other installable options, see printer driver help.

For more information, see [Punch position and hole punching](#) on page 103.

Stapler: Staple

The Staple print option allows you to specify the number of staples and their positions.

Staple positions vary according to paper size, paper type, number of pages, and feed direction.

To use this option, you must install a finisher with stapling functionality.

Variable Data Printing (VDP) options

The VDP tab shows all Variable Data Printing (VDP) settings, such as FreeForm and advanced VDP settings.

The Fiery ES is compatible with the following variable data printing languages:

- FreeForm and FreeForm 2

For more information about VDP languages, see *Variable Data Printing*.

VDP documents using FreeForm must have the following settings for the master document and variable document match:

- Color mode
- Combine separations

- Duplex
- Orientation
- Paper size
- Staple

The following setting for the variable document overrides the corresponding settings in the master document:

- Paper tray
- Paper type

Cache PDF and PS objects

The Cache PDF and PS objects print option, when selected, recognizes objects (text, images, vectors) within a PostScript or PDF file. PDF objects must be tagged as XObjects and PS objects must be in PS form to be cached, which reduces the need to re-process image data for faster printing.

This option is only accessible from Command WorkStation Job Properties.

For more information, see *Variable Data Printing*.

Create master

To create a FreeForm master from this job, specify a number to assign to the FreeForm master file.

Command WorkStation allows you to select up to 100 FreeForm masters.

For more information, see *Variable Data Printing*.

Enable enhanced FreeForm

Select to turn on Enable enhanced FreeForm to allow the mapping of select pages from the FreeForm master file in the desired order and merge with the variable file when the job is processed.

You cannot apply FreeForm settings to an imposed job.

For more information, see *Variable Data Printing*.

Preview Master

The Preview Master print option, when selected, generates a low-resolution image of your master page.

This option is not available for the Mac OS X v10.9 or later printer drivers.

Print master

The Print Master print option, when selected, allows you to verify or confirm your Master page.

Select Printer's default to use the setting specified in Fiery ES Setup.

For more information, see *Variable Data Printing*.

Remove white PPT background

Select to turn on Remove white PPT background when using Microsoft Office PowerPoint to create variable data in conjunction with FreeForm.

This option removes the white background from PowerPoint files.

Use master

For variable data print jobs, specify a FreeForm master number to be used for the job.

Command WorkStation allows you to select up to 100 FreeForm masters.

For more information, see *Variable Data Printing*.

Define record length: Define record length

Process a PDF or PostScript file like a variable data print job, and apply record-based finishing.

This option is used in connection with the Pages Per Record option.

For more information, see *Variable Data Printing*.

Define record length: Pages per record

Define record-based (rather than job-based) finishing, based on the number entered.

This option is used with the Define Record Length option.

For more information, see *Variable Data Printing*.

Stamping (Watermark) options

The Stamping tab shows all image stamping options that add or hide/remove any image on the job.

The watermark features are available from the printer driver only.

This also includes watermark properties that define the placement and style of the watermark. For information, see printer driver help.

Copy security

The Copy security print option allows you to use security settings to identify and prevent unauthorized copies.

Choose one of the following:

- Off - to not use security settings.
- Copy protect - to include a pattern that is faintly visible (background) on printed document, however when the document is photocopied, the imprint is darker and distinctly visible.

- Stamp repeat - to add a watermark/overlay that is clearly visible in both print and copies.
- Copy guard - to embed the copy guard information into the printed paper to prevent copying the printed paper on the printer.

Angle

The Angle print option allows you to specify an angle for Copy security stamping. Four lines or less can be printed when the angle is not “0 degrees.”

The option is valid when the Copy security print option is set to Copy protect or Stamp repeat.

Characters

The Characters print option allows you to select the characters (text) when using a watermark.

Color contrast

The Color contrast print option allows you to specify pattern color contrast for text/background color for Copy protect and Copy guard.

Color density

The Color density print option allows you to select a pattern color density for text/background color for Copy protect, Copy guard, and Stamp repeat.

Copy protect color

The Copy protect color print option allows you to specify the pattern color to use with the Copy security print option settings.

Text size

The Text size print option allows you to specify the text size for the Copy security print option settings.

Copy security numbers: Distribution control number

The Distribution control number print option when turned on allows you to include the Distribution control number when using the Copy security print option settings.

To assign a specific start number, use the separate Start number print option.

Copy security numbers: Job number

The Job number print option when turned on allows you to include the job number (printer-defined) when using the Copy security print option settings.

Copy security numbers: Serial number

The Serial number print option when turned on allows you to include the printer serial number when using the Copy security print option settings.

Copy security numbers: Start number

The Start number print option allows you to specify a starting copy number when using one of the Copy security print options.

Copy security numbers: Start number type

The Start number type print option allows you to specify the numbering format type when using the Copy security print option settings.

Copy security pattern: Background pattern

The Background pattern print option allows you to select the Copy protect or Copy guard patterns from the background patterns registered with the printer.

Copy security pattern: Pattern

The Pattern print option allows you to specify how to print the Copy security stamping pattern.

Copy security pattern: Pattern overwrite

The Pattern overwrite print option allows you to select whether the pattern is combined in the background or foreground of the document for Copy security stamping options.

Copy security timestamp: Date

The Date print option allows you to select the Copy security date format.

Copy security timestamp: Time

The Time print option allows you to select the Copy security time format.

Watermark

The Watermark print option allows you to select standard text for your watermark from the pull-down menu.

To create your own watermark, click **New**.

To modify a standard watermark, select it from the pull-down menu and click **Edit**.

To remove a watermark from the list, select it from the pull-down menu and click **Delete**.

For more information about using watermarks, see printer driver help.

Note: For Windows, do not select these fonts: AdobeSansMM and AdobeSerifMM.

Print Watermarks: First Page Only

The First Page Only print option check box, when selected, to specify how to print the watermark for the print job.

Select to turn on First Page Only to print a watermark only on the first page.

For more information about using watermarks, see printer driver help.

Override print option settings in Job Properties

Print option settings that were specified in the printer driver can be overridden in the Job Properties window of Command WorkStation.

- 1 In Command WorkStation, right-click a job in the Held or Printed queue.
- 2 Select Properties.
- 3 Specify the print option settings, and then click Print.

Exceptions to overriding print option settings in Job Properties

You can override most print options in the printer driver and Command WorkStation Job Properties.

The exceptions are listed in the table.

Printer driver tab	Option	Driver Win	Driver Mac	CWS
Job Info	Print Range			X
	Print queue action	X	X	
	Secure print	X	X	
	User Authentication: User name	X	X	
	User Authentication: Password	X	X	
	User Authentication: Use Windows Login	X		
	User Authentication: I'm a Guest	X		
Media	Document size	X		
Layout: Normal	Mirror	X		
	Orientation	X		
	Orientation override			X
Color	Optimize RGB transparency			X
Variable Data Printing (VDP)	Cache PDF and PS objects			X

Printer driver tab	Option	Driver Win	Driver Mac	CWS
	Enable enhanced FreeForm	X		X
Stamping (Watermark)	Watermarks	X	X	
	Print Watermarks: First Page Only	X	X	

Booklet Maker layouts in the printer driver and Command WorkStation Job Properties

Booklet Maker is the imposition tool that allows you to quickly print documents in booklet format, without the need for more involved page imposition programs.

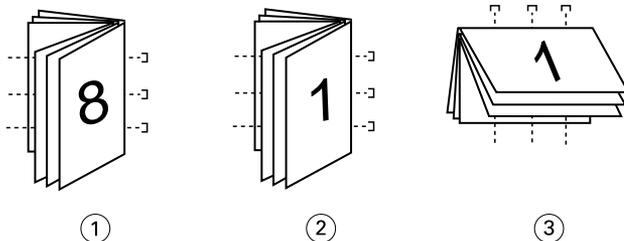
Booklet Maker provides advanced settings, while streamlining the booklet-making process by displaying only the options and controls relevant to your selections. Booklet Maker is capable of imposing jobs from nearly any application.

Access Booklet Maker in the printer driver when you print a job, or in Command WorkStation Job Properties.

Note: Mixed Media jobs and variable data printing jobs are not supported by Booklet Maker.

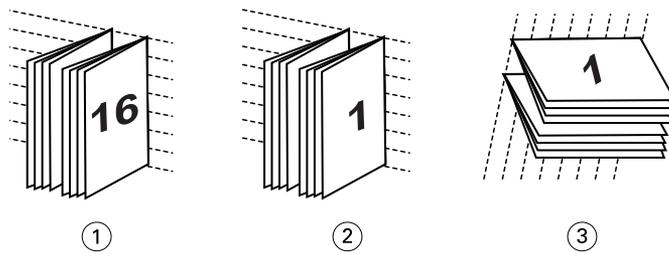
The following booklet layouts are available:

- **Saddle binding:** Signatures are folded together as a group, and then stapled or stitched along the center fold, which forms the spine of the booklet.



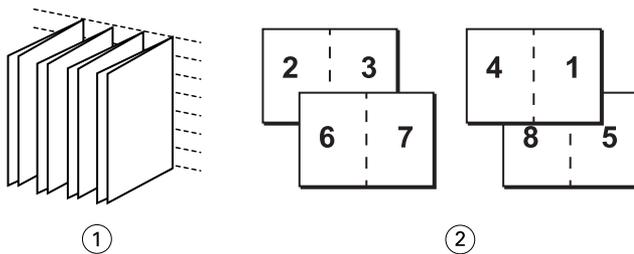
- 1 Saddle (left) binding
- 2 Saddle (right) binding
- 3 Saddle (top) binding

- **Nested Saddle binding:** Combines saddle and perfect binding methods by stacking two or more saddles (also called “groups” or “subsets”) together along the common fold, then gluing them together at the fold to form the spine.



- 1 Nested Saddle (left) binding
- 2 Nested Saddle (right) binding
- 3 Nested Saddle (top) binding

- Perfect binding: Separate, folded pages are printed and stacked in booklet order. Finished pages are stitched adjacent to one another for trimming or gluing.



- 1 Perfect booklet
- 2 Front (2, 3, 6, 7) and Back (4, 1, 8, 5)

For more information, see *Booklet Maker Help*.

For more information, see [Booklet options in the printer driver and Job Properties](#) on page 74.

Booklet Maker in the printer driver and Command WorkStation Job Properties

You can access Booklet Maker from the Layout tab in the printer driver and Command WorkStation Job Properties when you print a job.

You can work with Booklet Maker as follows:

- Using the Booklet Maker wizard.
 Recommended for first-time or novice users.
- Specifying settings in the main Booklet pane.
 Recommended for experienced or advanced users.

For more information, see [Booklet options in the printer driver and Job Properties](#) on page 74.

Access Booklet Maker from the Windows printer driver

- 1 In your application, select File > Print.

- 2 Select the Fiery ES as your printer and click Properties.
- 3 In the printer driver, click Layout and then select the Booklet option.
 For more information, see *Booklet Maker Help*.

Access Booklet Maker from the Mac OS printer driver

- 1 In your application, select File > Print.
- 2 Select the Fiery ES as your printer, and select Fiery Features from the drop-down list.
- 3 Click Full Properties in the Quick Access pane.
- 4 In the printer driver, click Layout and then select the Booklet option.
 For more information, see *Booklet Maker Help*.

Access Booklet Maker from Command WorkStation

- 1 Double-click your print job in the Held or Printed queue, or right-click the job and select Properties.
- 2 Click Layout in the Job Properties window.
- 3 Select the Booklet option.
- 4 Specify the Booklet Maker settings or click Launch Wizard to specify the settings graphically.
 For more information, see *Command WorkStation Help*.

About Booklet Maker imposition

Imposition is the process of printing multiple pages on single sheets of paper.

When imposed sheets are folded together as signatures, the pages follow in sequential, or reading, order. Booklet Maker is designed for 2-up imposition, which imposes four individual pages from your document on a single sheet that is printed duplex.

The order in which pages are imposed is determined by the binding method that you select.

Booklet Maker and Impose

Booklet Maker settings are supported by Impose, if turned on.

You can open a job with Booklet Maker settings in Impose to preview the imposition layout or further modify the imposition layout, if necessary.

Impose translates and maps all Booklet Maker settings to Impose commands.

Note: When a job with Booklet Maker settings has been edited in the Impose window, the job can no longer be edited in Booklet Maker. Impose offers more settings that cannot be mapped to Booklet Maker settings.

For more information about Impose, see *Utilities*.

Create a booklet with the booklet options in the printer driver or Job Properties

Booklet Maker dynamically displays all of the controls applicable to creating a booklet in the main Booklet Maker window.

- 1 Select a Booklet Type: Saddle, Nested Saddle, or Perfect.
- 2 Select a binding edge: Left, Top, or Right.
- 3 Specify a Paper size.
- 4 Select Shrink to fit, if required.
- 5 Specify Page alignment.
- 6 Specify Creep compensation, if required.
 Creep compensation is available for saddle and nested saddle booklets.
- 7 Specify cover settings, if you selected a saddle booklet.
Note: Cover settings are only available for saddle booklets. (See [Adding a cover to a Saddle booklet](#) on page 96).
- 8 Click OK to save your settings, Cancel to cancel the job, or Print to print your job.

Create a booklet with the Booklet Maker wizard

In the Booklet Maker wizard, accessed by clicking Launch Wizard, the windows display the steps in the booklet-making process.

- 1 Click Launch Wizard.
- 2 Specify the Booklet Type (binding method) and binding edge.
- 3 If Saddle was selected for Booklet Type, specify cover and content settings, and then click Next.
- 4 Specify paper size and media settings, and then click Next.
 If Saddle was selected for Booklet Type, specify the paper settings for the cover, and then click Next.
 If Nested Saddle was selected for Booklet Type, specify number of sheets in a subset.
- 5 Specify layout settings, and then click Next.
 If Saddle or Nested Saddle was selected for Booklet Type, specify creep compensation.
- 6 View the settings summary.
- 7 Click Finish to save your booklet, Back to change any settings, or Cancel to cancel the job.

Adding a cover to a Saddle booklet

You can add covers (optional) for Saddle booklets.

Add a pre-printed cover to a Saddle booklet

- 1 In the main Booklet Maker window, select Saddle for Booklet Type and a binding edge.
- 2 Specify the required settings for Paper Size and Page Alignment for the body of the booklet.
- 3 Select Pre-Printed from the Cover: Content input menu.
- 4 Click Define Cover and specify the cover media settings.
- 5 Click OK.

Add an inline cover to a Saddle booklet

- 1 In the main Booklet Maker window, select Saddle for Booklet Type and a binding edge.
- 2 Specify the required settings for Paper Size and Page Alignment for the body of the booklet.
- 3 Select Front & Back Separately from the Cover: Content input menu.
- 4 Specify the Front cover and Back cover settings.
- 5 Click Define Cover and specify the cover media settings.
- 6 Click OK.

Note: When you print an inline cover with top-edge binding, the outside back cover automatically rotates 180 degrees to match the orientation of the front cover.

Booklet Maker cover options for Saddle booklets

For Saddle only, Booklet Maker includes two cover options: pre-printed or inline, for which you can specify media. You can specify additional options for an inline cover by specifying the following cover options:

- Content input: Select from Front & Back Separately or Pre-Printed.
- Front & Back Separately: Select this option to specify an inline cover that prints the cover pages and body pages as a single job. Separate pages from your document are imposed on a single sheet that forms the cover pages of your booklet.

You can specify an inline cover when your original document includes the cover pages and/or cover artwork for your booklet. The cover content may be the first and last pages of your document, or the first two and last two pages of your document, or any combination.

If you select this option, you can specify the Front cover and Back cover options.

- Pre-Printed: Select this option to insert a pre-printed cover that will be merged with the body pages of your booklet, which print separately.

If you select this option, the Front cover and Back cover options are disabled.

- **Front cover and Back cover:** These options allow you to quickly decide whether your front and back covers print duplex, single-sided, or both sides blank, without needing to add blank pages in your original document.

With top-edge binding that includes a cover, the outside of the back cover automatically rotates 180 degrees to match the orientation of the front cover.

- **Define Cover:** This option allows you to select cover media settings for your cover pages, which may be trimmed. This option is available for both pre-printed and inline covers.

Printing Booklet Maker jobs

Booklet Maker does not support jobs sent to the Direct connection. Booklet Maker print jobs must be sent to the Print queue or Hold queue.

Set measurement units in Command WorkStation

You can change the default unit of measurement for all input fields in the Command WorkStation Preferences window.

Units specifies the units of measurement used to display attributes, such as page sizes and custom sizes, that you enter in the Job Properties window. This setting does not affect predefined page-size values.

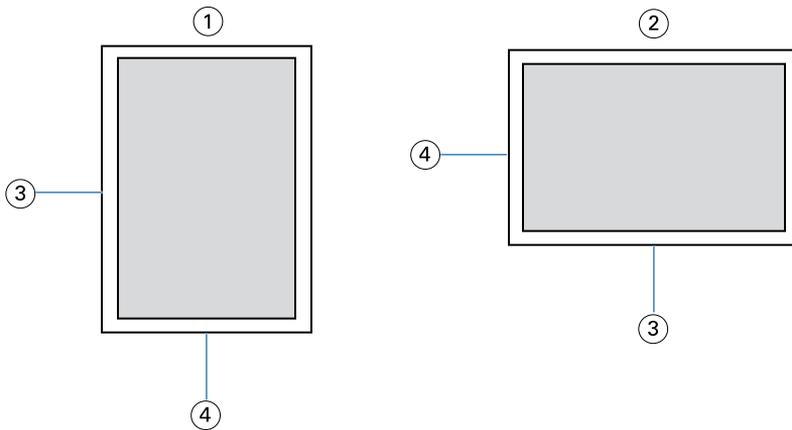
- 1 In Command WorkStation, select Edit > Preferences.
- 2 Click Region to access Regional Settings.
- 3 Select the unit of measurement (millimeters, points, or inches).
- 4 Click OK.

The changes are not effective until Command WorkStation is restarted.

Defining and printing custom page sizes

With custom page sizes, you define the dimensions of a printed page. After you define a custom page size, you can use it from within an application without redefining it each time you print.

When you create custom page sizes, specify width dimensions to correspond with the shorter side of your job and specify height dimensions to correspond with the longer side of your job. Set custom page sizes in this way, regardless of the orientation settings in the application.



- 1 Portrait orientation
- 2 Landscape orientation
- 3 Height
- 4 Width

Note: Custom page sizes are not supported with Imposition jobs.

For information about defining and printing custom page sizes, see printer driver help.

Document size and Paper size

Document size is the page size defined in your application’s Print setup (or Page setup) dialog box.

Paper size is the size of the actual sheet of paper on which your job is printed. It may be useful to think of Document size as digital *input* (the page size defined in your original document) and Paper size as the physical *output* (the actual size of the paper in the printer tray).

In cases when you print one document page per sheet of paper, Document size is usually the same as the Paper size. However, Document size may differ from Paper size when you print booklets or impose multiple document pages on a single sheet.

The illustrations show examples of possible relationships between Document size and Paper size. Note that the orientation of all pages shown is landscape.

Description	Document size (input)	Paper size (output)
Document size is the same as Paper size. Scaling is 100%.	Letter 	Letter 
Tabloid Document size scaled to fit on Letter Paper size. Scaling is 50%.	Tabloid 11x17 	Letter 
A4 Document size scaled to fit on A3 Paper size. Scaling is 141%.	A4 	A3 

Document size may also differ from Paper size when using the Scale or Scale to fit options. The Scale option reduces or enlarges the document page at a specified percent. The Scale to fit option automatically reduces or enlarges the document image to fit the selected paper size.

For information about Document size and Paper size in booklet printing, see *Booklet Maker Help*.

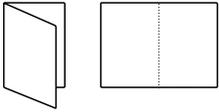
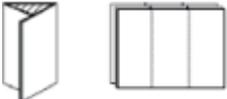
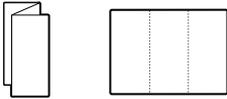
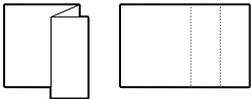
For more information, see [Scale](#) on page 72.

For more information, see [Scale to fit](#) on page 72.

Fold options

The Fold style specifies how the folded job is printed.

You can specify whether the pages of your folded job print with the imageable area on the inside or outside of the folded sheet.

Fold style	Fold illustration
Half-fold	
Tri-fold	
Z-fold (A3, B4, 11x17, 8K)	
Z-fold (8 1/2x14)	

A finisher capable of folding must be installed on the printer to use the Fold print option.

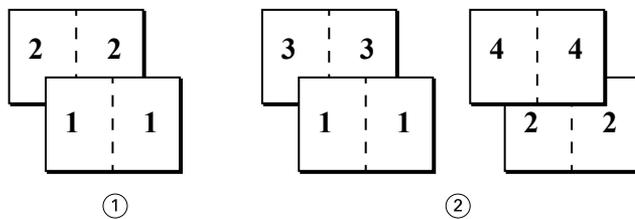
For information about finishers and other installable options, see printer driver help.

Gang-up printing

Gangup layout options are used for speed printing imposition modes.

The Fiery ES includes two speed-printing options for gang-up printing:

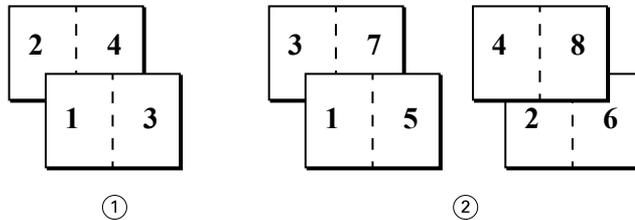
- **Step & repeat** - Select this option to speed print a job so that the first page of your document is printed twice on the first sheet. The next sheet duplicates the data on the second page, the next sheet duplicates the data on the third page, and so on. When the printed sheets are cut in half, the result is two complete sets of the same document.



1 Single-sided, front only

2 Duplex (double-sided), front (1, 3) and back (2, 4)

- **Cut & stack** - Select this option to speed print a job so that when the sheets are stacked and cut from the central position, the job is numbered in order and separated as two stacks. The print order is such that when the sheets are cut in half, you can combine them to form a single complete set of the document, in faster printing time.



1 Single-sided, front only

2 Duplex (double-sided), front (1, 3, 5, 7) and back (2, 4, 6, 8)

For more information, see [Gangup layout options](#) on page 73.

Access Gang-up print from the Windows printer driver

- 1 In your application, select File > Print.
- 2 Select the Fiery ES as your printer and click Properties.
- 3 In the printer driver, click the Layout icon and select the Gangup option.

Access Gang-up print from the Mac OS X printer driver

- 1 In your application, select File > Print.
- 2 Select the Fiery ES as your printer and select Fiery Features from the drop-down list.
- 3 Click Full Properties in the Quick Access pane.
- 4 In the printer driver, click the Layout icon and select the Gangup option.

Image Enhance

The Image Enhance feature lets you apply photo finishing enhancement to color images on specified pages or sheets of a job. This feature affects only photographic images, not graphics such as logos or charts.

To turn on this feature, select the Apply image enhancement check box for a job and specify the pages or sheets to be affected. This option is located in the Image tab of the printer drivers and in the Job Properties window of Command WorkStation. You can customize Image Enhance settings from Command WorkStation.

For more information, see *Command WorkStation Help*.

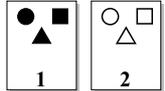
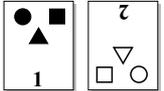
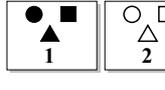
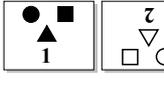
Print Duplex (double-sided) pages

1 In your application, do one of the following:

- **On Mac OS X computers:** Select File > Print, select the Fiery ES as your printer, select Fiery Features from the drop-down list, click Full Properties in the Quick Access pane, and then select Normal on the Layout tab.
- **On Windows computers:** Select File > Print, select the Fiery ES as your printer, click Printer Properties or Properties, and then click the Layout icon.

2 Select one of the Duplex settings:

- **Right & left bind:** Prints the top of the image on Side 1, on the same edge of the page as the top of the image on Side 2.
- **Top bind:** Prints the top of the image on Side 1, on the opposite edge of the page from the top of the image on Side 2.

Orientation	Right & Left binding	Top binding
Portrait		
Landscape		

3 Print the job.

Punch position and hole punching

You can specify the number of holes to punch and the location of the punched holes.

A finisher capable of punching must be installed on the printer.

Note: Punch positions vary according to paper size, paper type, number of pages, feed direction, and original orientation.

Punch setting	Portrait: Left	Portrait: Right	Portrait: Top	Landscape: Left	Landscape: Right	Landscape: Top Right
2-holes						
3-holes						

Punch setting	Portrait: Left	Portrait: Right	Portrait: Top	Landscape: Left	Landscape: Right	Landscape: Top
4-holes						

The number of holes differs depending on the finisher destination:

- US, 2-holes or 3-holes
- EU, 2-holes or 4-holes

For information about finishers and other installable options, see printer driver help.

User Authentication

If Users and Groups user authentication is configured in Fiery ES Setup, you must enter a valid user name and password to send a print job to the Fiery ES.

In Command WorkStation, the management of jobs is determined by how you log on to the Fiery ES.

The print options associated with Users and Groups user authentication are as follows:

- **On Mac OS computers:** Click Job Info and type logon information in the User name and Password fields.
- **On Windows computers:** Set the following:
 - Use Windows Login - Select this option if you are already logged on to a Windows computer. Otherwise, type your Windows network logon information in the User name and Password fields.
 - Validate - Click to validate user authorization and to confirm printing privileges. To validate, Two-Way Communication must be turned on. For information on establishing Two-Way Communication, see printer driver help.
 - I'm a guest - Select this option to activate guest printing privileges. By default, guest printing is turned on.

For information about turning on Users and Groups user authentication in Configure, see *Configuration and Setup* and *Command WorkStation Help*.



Fiery® ES IC-418

Color Printing

© 2017 Electronics For Imaging, Inc. The information in this publication is covered under Legal Notices for this product.

27 October 2017

45174728



Contents

Introduction	5
Terminology, conventions, and documentation resources	5
Key features of ColorWise	6
Color features in Command WorkStation	6
Color features in Fiery Productivity Package	7
Color print options	9
Color management on the Fiery ES	9
Auto trapping	10
Black overprint	11
Black point compensation	11
Black text and graphics	12
CMYK rendering intent	13
Device link profiles	14
Combine separations	15
Composite overprint	15
Grayscale rendering intent	16
ImageViewer Curves	17
Optimize RGB transparency	17
Output profile	18
Print RGB/CMYK using gray only	18
RGB rendering intent	19
RGB source, CMYK source, and Grayscale source	20
Separate RGB/Lab to CMYK source	21
Spot color matching	22
Substitute colors	22
Use embedded profile	23
Where to specify color print options	23
Print from an application	24
Print with color settings in Mac OS	25
Color profiles	26
ICC profiles in the user software package	26
Add ICC profiles from the user software package	28

Install ICC profiles on a Windows computer	29
Install ICC profiles on a Mac OS computer	29
Color Bars folder	29
Calibration	30
Check calibration status	30
Check the calibration status for a job	30
Check the status of a specific calibration	30
Calibrator in Command WorkStation	30
Calibrate the Fiery ES with Command WorkStation	31
Calibration from the printer control panel	32
Calibrate the Fiery ES from the printer control panel	32
Managing calibration settings	33
Output profiles and calibration settings	33
Find recommended paper and print settings	34
Custom calibration settings	34
Custom calibration settings and output profiles	34
Understanding calibration	34
How calibration works	35
When to calibrate	35
Spot-On	37
Spot Colors in Command WorkStation	37
How Spot-On works	37
Monitor settings	38

Introduction

This document explains how to manage color output on the Fiery® ES IC-418 and provides information about color conversion and other color operations.

This document is part of a set that includes documentation for users and system administrators. For more information about supported operating systems and system requirements, see *Configuration and Setup*.

Terminology, conventions, and documentation resources

This document uses the following terminology and conventions to refer to the Fiery® ES IC-418, printer, and supported operating systems.

Term or convention	Refers to
Aero	Fiery ES (in illustrations and examples)
Command WorkStation	Fiery Command WorkStation
Printer	MFP
Fiery ES	Fiery® ES IC-418
Mac OS	All supported Mac operating systems. For a complete list, see System Requirements in <i>Configuration and Setup</i> .
Windows	All supported Windows operating systems. For a complete list, see System Requirements in <i>Configuration and Setup</i> .
 Warning:	A warning concerning operations that may lead to death or injury to persons if not performed correctly. To use the equipment safely, always pay attention to these warnings.
 Caution:	A caution concerning operations that may lead to injury to persons if not performed correctly. To use the equipment safely, always pay attention to these cautions.
 Important:	Operational requirements and restrictions. Be sure to read these items carefully to operate the equipment correctly, and avoid damage to the equipment or property.

The following documentation resources are available for the Fiery® ES IC-418.

Resource	Description
User documentation	Documents in this set: <i>Color Printing</i> , <i>Configuration and Setup</i> , <i>Fiery Productivity Package</i> , <i>Printing</i> , <i>Utilities</i>

Resource	Description
Online help	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Help can be accessed directly from each Fiery application or by going to help.EFI.com.• Each help system is available as a printable PDF, accessed from the PDF icon in the upper right corner of the Help window.
Additional reference material	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Fiery Color Reference</i> - help.EFI.com/ref/colorref/en-us/• <i>Variable Data Printing</i> - help.EFI.com/ref/vdp/en-us/• <i>Workflow Examples</i> - help.EFI.com/ref/workflows/en-us/• <i>Configure Help</i> - help.EFI.com/configure/3.0/en-us/

Key features of ColorWise

ColorWise is the color management system (CMS) built into the Fiery ES and designed to provide both casual and expert users with the best color output for a variety of purposes. The ColorWise default settings provide high-quality, out-of-box color from many applications.

ColorWise default settings allow casual users to achieve quality output without knowing about or changing any color settings on the Fiery ES. ColorWise also provides controls to allow expert users to obtain the best color output.

Depending on your particular needs, you can:

- Set the behavior of CMYK printing to emulate offset press standards.
- Match PANTONE and other spot colors for the best match when printing using four-color press conditions or presses with extra colorants.
- Select a rendering intent for RGB printing. Rendering intents allow for rich, saturated printing of presentation graphics, smooth, accurate printing of photographs, and relative or absolute colorimetric rendering for specialized needs.
- Define the source of incoming RGB color data for better color conversion of RGB data with no source information.
- Determine whether RGB data is converted into the full gamut of the printer or is first converted into the gamut of another device, such as a press standard. This feature is useful for making one device behave like another for RGB data. It also allows you to evaluate the appearance of an RGB file under different printing conditions without having to convert the RGB file to CMYK first.

ColorWise color management (ColorWise) offers an open color architecture, allowing users to customize the Fiery ES to meet new printing needs as they arise. ColorWise supports ICC profiles, which are industry-standard color profiles that describe the color behavior of a device. Note that ICC specification version 4 profiles (profile version 4.2.0.0) are supported as well as version 2. Downloading ICC profiles to the Fiery ES enables the Fiery ES to simulate a custom press (or another printer), as well as accurately print colors from a particular monitor or scanner. In addition, you can create customized ICC profiles for the Fiery ES.

Color features in Command WorkStation

Command WorkStation includes color-management tools and color-related features.

- Color management

Command WorkStation allows you to set the default settings of the ColorWise print options for the Fiery ES. These default settings are applied to all print jobs sent to the Fiery ES, unless a user overrides them for an individual job.

- Profiles

Command WorkStation allows you to manage all of the ICC profiles used in Fiery ES workflows. You can also create custom profiles by editing existing CMYK source or output profiles and saving them as new profiles.

The AutoGray feature allows you to adjust the gray balance of output profiles.

- Calibrator

For consistent color, calibrate the Fiery ES on a regular basis. Command WorkStation includes an easy-to-use calibrator, which allows you to calibrate using a measurement instrument.

Command WorkStation also allows you to use any Status T densitometer by importing data in a standard file format. In this case, it is important to note that the quality of the instrument used determines the quality of the calibration.

Color features in Fiery Productivity Package

If Fiery Productivity Package is activated on the Fiery ES, additional color features are available in Command WorkStation.

For more information, see *Fiery Productivity Package*.

- Spot-On (spot colors)

Spot-On is a spot color (named color) manager. You can adjust and manage lists of spot colors and their CMYK equivalents. The matching lists of spot colors and CMYK values are known as spot color dictionaries. Spot-On allows you to edit spot color definitions on the Fiery ES and create custom spot color definitions and dictionaries.

Spot-On is also required for spot color overprinting, when a job contains overlapping spot-color objects.

- Configurable auto trapping

Trapping is a technique where the size of objects is modified so that colors printed next to each other overlap slightly, to prevent white spaces between two colors. The Fiery ES has default trapping values that are optimized for the printer using regular paper.

The configurable auto trapping feature provides you with advanced settings for the Auto trapping print option. If the default trapping values do not provide the results necessary for the media that you use, you can modify the values to meet your requirements.

- ImageViewer

ImageViewer allows you to soft proof and adjust colors in a job before it is printed. You can use the preview in ImageViewer to verify job placement, orientation, and content, as well as general color accuracy.

- Image Enhance Visual Editor (IEVE)

IEVE is an image-editing application that provides users with a visual workspace to adjust individual images in a job. With IEVE, you can see the effects of your adjustments and fine-tune the appearance of an image.

- Control bar

The control bar feature allows you to add a static color bar and dynamic job information to each printed page at a user-defined location. The feature can be set as a server default or overridden on a per-job basis.

- Postflight

Postflight is a diagnostic tool that helps you determine why some printed jobs do not deliver the expected color output.

Color print options

The Fiery ES provides print options that affect the output of color objects in various color spaces. By specifying the appropriate settings for each print option, you can obtain the expected results for your jobs.

Color management determines how color data in a job is converted to the color data that is sent to the printer. Some color print options affect the color management applied to a job. Other color print options are not related to color management.

Color management on the Fiery ES

The color management system on the Fiery ES determines how the color data in a document is converted from source to output.

Applications allow you to generate color data in different color spaces. The most common type of color data produced from office applications is RGB, while prepress applications generally produce CMYK data. Desktop applications also generate spot colors, such as PANTONE colors. A single page of a document may contain a mix of RGB, CMYK, grayscale, and spot colors.

Through print options that apply specifically to RGB, CMYK, grayscale, or spot color data, you specify the color management of a job.

Note: Before you set these color management options, you must set the Color mode option, which specifies the output color space (CMYK, for example). If you change the Color mode setting, color management options are reset to the server default settings.

Print options that affect CMYK data	Print options that affect RGB data	Print options that affect grayscale data	Print options that affect spot-color data
CMYK source	RGB source	Grayscale source	Spot color matching
Use CMYK embedded profiles	Use RGB embedded profiles	Use Gray embedded profiles	Use spot color group
CMYK rendering intent	RGB rendering intent	Grayscale rendering intent	
Black point compensation	Separate RGB/Lab to CMYK source		
Black text and graphics	Black text and graphics		

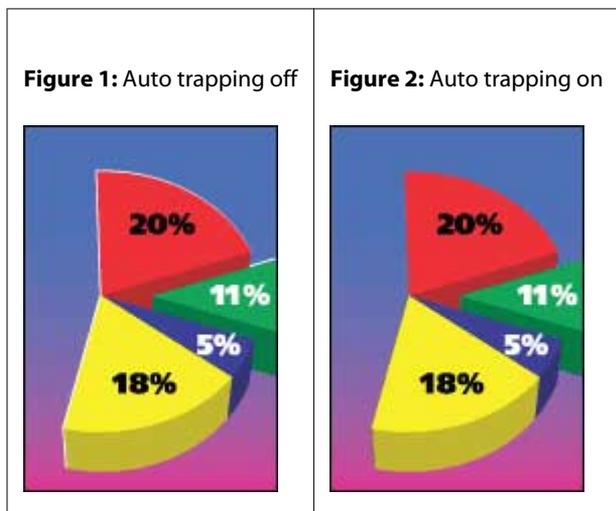
Print options that affect CMYK data	Print options that affect RGB data	Print options that affect grayscale data	Print options that affect spot-color data
Black overprint	Black overprint		
Print CMYK gray using black only	Print RGB gray using black only	Print gray using black only	
Output profile	Output profile	Output profile	

RGB Source applies strictly to RGB color data. The other options that affect RGB color also affect Lab, XYZ, and other calibrated color spaces, which are more rarely used.

If a job contains calibrated CMYK (CIEBasedDEFG) data, the CMYK processing options are not used. Instead, the RGB/Lab Rendering Intent print option, which normally affects only RGB data, is used to process the calibrated CMYK data.

Auto trapping

Trapping is a technique where the size of objects is modified so that colors printed next to each other overlap slightly, to prevent white spaces between two colors. These white spaces can be caused by factors such as misregistration, the physical properties of the ink or toner, and the stiffness of the media.



If you turn on the Auto trapping option, trapping is applied to all of the objects in a job.

The Fiery ES has default trapping values that are optimized for a Fiery-driven print device using regular paper.

If the default trapping values do not provide the results necessary for the media that you use, you can modify the values to meet your requirements in Command WorkStation with the configurable auto trapping feature.

Configurable auto trapping is part of Fiery Productivity Package. For more information about configurable auto trapping, see *Fiery Productivity Package*.

Black overprint

The Black overprint (for Pure Black) option specifies whether black text, or black text and vector graphics (where black is defined as RGB=0, 0, 0, or as CMYK=0%, 0%, 0%, 100%) print over colored backgrounds. If you turn off this option, black text, or black text and graphics knock out colored backgrounds. Knocking out can create a white edge around objects, or a white space, caused by the misalignment of color plates.

Note: You can set Black overprint (for Pure Black) only if Black text and graphics is set to Pure Black On.

The Black overprint (for Pure Black) option has the following settings:

- Text - Black text overprints colored backgrounds, eliminating white gaps and reducing the halo effect from misregistration of colors.
- Text/Graphics - Black text and graphics overprint colored backgrounds, eliminating white gaps and the halo effect from misregistration of colors.
- Off - Black text and graphics knock out colored backgrounds.

Note: PostScript applications may perform their own black overprint conversions before printing.

An example of how you might use this setting is a page that contains black text on a light blue background. The background blue is CMYK=40%, 30%, 0%, 0%. The black text is CMYK=0%, 0%, 0%, 100%.

- With Black overprint (for Pure Black) set to Text or Text/Graphics, the final text or graphic portions of the page are overprinted, or combined with the underlying color. Black colors generated by applications (for example, RGB=0, 0, 0 or CMYK=0%, 0%, 0%, 100%) are printed using black only. This means that black text and line art do not exhibit halftone artifacts (as long as the printer is calibrated correctly). No transition in cyan and magenta occurs and the quality of the output is improved, because it does not show artifacts near the edges of text.
- With Black overprint (for Pure Black) set to Off, the border of the text or graphic is on an edge that has cyan and magenta on one side (outside the object) and black on the other side (inside the object). This transition may cause visible artifacts due to the practical limitations of the printer.

Note: The reproduction of CMYK components is affected by the CMYK Source setting and calibration when CMYK is not 0%, 0%, 0%, 100%.

Black point compensation

The Black point compensation option lets you control the output quality of shadow areas for CMYK source colors.

Black point compensation works by scaling the source colors so that the darkest point in the source profile maps to the darkest point in the output profile. Use Black point compensation to enhance details in shadows when the CMYK source space is larger than the gamut of the printer. In proofing applications, when the CMYK source space is smaller than the gamut of the printer, do not use this option.

Note: For RGB source colors, black point compensation is always applied to Relative Colorimetric. Black point compensation does not apply to Absolute Colorimetric. Photographic already scales the saturated colors and shadow detail to the color capabilities of the output device, so black point compensation is not relevant.

Black text and graphics

The Black text and graphics option affects black text and vector graphics. When you set this option to Pure Black On, the black generated by applications (RGB=0, 0, 0 or CMYK=0%, 0%, 0%, 100%) is printed using black only.

With Black text and graphics set to Pure Black On, black text and line art are not misregistered, since only one colorant is used. This setting also eliminates blasting, which is an undesirable effect that occurs when excess amounts of ink or toner, combined with certain types of paper stock, cause objects to spread beyond their defined boundaries.

For some jobs, we recommend setting Black text and graphics to Normal. For example, if a job includes gradient fills that use black, the Normal setting gives the best result.

If you set Black overprint (for pure black) to Text or Text/Graphics, Black text and graphics must be set to Pure Black On.

Note: Use Black text and graphics only when printing composites, not separations.

The following table describes the behavior of Black text and graphics with black defined in different color spaces.

Color	Black text and graphics = Normal	Black text and graphics = Pure Black On or Rich Black On
RGB=0,0,0 (all other RGB values are unaffected by Black text and graphics)	Printed according to the definition for RGB=0,0,0 in the output profile. This may be a rich black (one that uses multiple colorants) if the output profile specifies a rich black, or K-only if the output profile specifies K-only for RGB=0,0,0. The output is affected by calibration.	Printed as 100% K (Pure Black On) or 100% K plus 50% Cyan (Rich Black On) using black and cyan.
CMYK=0%,0%,0%,100% (all other CMYK values are unaffected by Black text and graphics)	<p>Printed as K-only or as a rich black using all colorants, depending on the CMYK source and CMYK rendering intent settings.</p> <p>If CMYK rendering intent is set to Pure Primaries, or if CMYK source is set to Bypass Conversion, CMYK=0%,0%,0%,100% prints as 100% K and the amount of black is limited by the CMYK source profile and calibration.</p> <p>If CMYK rendering intent is set to Relative Colorimetric, CMYK=0%,0%,0%,100% is printed as a rich black using all colorants according to the output profile. The output is affected by calibration.</p> <p>Note: Setting CMYK source to ColorWise OFF disables the CMYK Source profile and calibration. In this case, the black is not limited by calibration.</p>	Printed as 100% K (Pure Black On) or 100% K plus 50% Cyan (Rich Black On) using black and cyan, regardless of the CMYK source and CMYK rendering intent settings.

Color	Black text and graphics = Normal	Black text and graphics = Pure Black On or Rich Black On
Spot colors (unaffected by Black text and graphics)	Standard spot color processing	Standard spot color processing

Note: PostScript applications may convert elements defined as RGB=0, 0, 0 to four-color CMYK black before sending the job to the Fiery ES. These elements are not affected by the Black text and graphics option.

CMYK rendering intent

The CMYK rendering intent option specifies a rendering intent for color conversion. This conversion can be optimized for the type of color image being printed.

To control the appearance of content in CMYK colors, select the appropriate rendering intent. The Fiery ES allows you to select from the four rendering intents currently found in industry-standard ICC profiles, and provides support for a fifth rendering intent, Pure Primaries, that is exclusive to the Fiery ES.

Note: If you experience tone reproduction problems, use the Photographic setting.

Rendering intent	Best used for	Equivalent ICC rendering intent
Photographic - Typically results in less-saturated output than presentation rendering when printing out-of-gamut colors. This style preserves tonal relationships in images.	Photographs, including scans and images from stock photography CDs and digital camera images.	Image, Contrast, and Perceptual
Presentation - Creates saturated colors but does not match printed colors precisely to displayed colors. In-gamut colors, such as flesh tones, are rendered well. This style is similar to the Photographic rendering intent.	Artwork and graphs in presentations. This style can be used for mixed pages that contain presentation graphics and photographs.	Saturation, Graphics
Relative Colorimetric - Provides white point transformation between the source and destination white points. For example, the bluish-white color (gray) of a monitor is replaced by paper white. This style avoids visible borders between blank spaces and white objects.	Advanced use when color matching is important, but you prefer white colors in the document to print as paper white. This style may also be used with PostScript color management to affect CMYK data for simulation purposes.	Relative Colorimetric

Rendering intent	Best used for	Equivalent ICC rendering intent
Absolute Colorimetric - Provides no white point transformation between the source and destination white points. For example, the bluish-white color (gray) is not replaced by paper white.	Situations when exact colors are needed and visible borders are not distracting. This style may also be used with PostScript color management to affect CMYK data for simulation purposes.	Absolute Colorimetric
Pure Primaries - Uses pure colorants, free from contaminating colorants that are introduced when color management tries to match the appearance of a color on image systems with different color capabilities.	When source content is made up of one or two process colorants, they remain as one or two process colorants in the final print. This rendering intent does not achieve colorimetric accuracy, and content is not expected to match that of other print systems.	Pure Primaries

Device link profiles

To be selected for a print job, a device link profile must reside on the Fiery ES and be associated with a specific source profile and output profile.

When you select the source profile and output profile settings associated with a device link profile, the Fiery ES bypasses its normal color management and applies the device link conversion to the color data in the job. The source profile and the output profile are not used.

Profiles that do not reside on the Fiery ES do not appear as settings. A device link profile that is not associated with a source profile setting and an output profile setting cannot be selected for a job. Therefore, even though the source profile and output profile that are associated with a device link profile are not used to calculate color conversions, they must reside on the Fiery ES.

Device link profiles are disabled when certain Color input settings have been specified. See the table below:

RGB-CMYK device link	CMYK-CMYK device link
Use RGB embedded profile	Use CMYK embedded profile
RGB rendering intent	CMYK rendering intent Note: In Fiery system software FS200/200 Pro and earlier, CMYK Processing Method
Print RGB gray using black only	Print CMYK gray using black only
	Black point compensation

Combine separations

The Combine separations option specifies how to print separated CMYK data.

You can combine Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, and Black separations.

- Off - Prints each separation individually.
- On - Combines separations as a single, composite-color document, and automatically sets the following print options: Color mode (CMYK) and Black overprint (Off).

The results of combining the multiple plates are predictable and accurate, regardless of the original application used. This feature also fully supports DCS 2.0 file formats when included in a PostScript print job from a page-layout application.

The following applications have been tested with Mac OS and Windows for compatibility with the Combine separations option:

- Adobe Illustrator
- Adobe InDesign
- Adobe PageMaker
- QuarkXPress

Note: You cannot use Combine separations at the same time that you use the following features: Substitute colors, Composite overprint, Postflight, or Black overprint.

Composite overprint

The Composite overprint print option allows you to print overprinted objects as specified in the source file.

When overlapping objects are printed, the foreground object can either overprint or knock out the background object. With overprinting, the color of the background object shows through the foreground object where they overlap, and the resulting color is a combination of the colors of the two objects. With a knockout, the foreground object hides the background object where they overlap.

- Off - An overprinted object knocks out a background object.
- On - The area of overlap between two overprinted objects is a blend of the two colors.

Note: The Composite overprint option does not overprint the foreground object if it is an RGB object.

The Composite overprint print option is supported for PostScript and PDF jobs produced by the following applications:

- Adobe Acrobat
- Adobe Illustrator
- Adobe InDesign
- QuarkXPress
- CorelDRAW

You cannot use Composite overprint at the same time that you use Combine separations.

If Composite overprint is turned on for a job that contains spot colors, Spot-On must be activated on the Fiery ES.

Grayscale rendering intent

The Grayscale rendering intent option specifies a rendering intent for color conversion. This conversion can be optimized for the type of gray objects being printed.

To control the appearance of text, graphics, and images in grayscale, select the appropriate rendering intent. The Fiery ES allows you to select from the four rendering intents currently found in industry-standard ICC profiles.

Note: If you experience tone reproduction problems, use the Photographic setting.

Rendering intent	Best used for	Equivalent ICC rendering intent
Photographic - Typically results in less-saturated output than presentation rendering when printing out-of-gamut colors. This style preserves tonal relationships in images.	Photographs, including scans and images from stock photography CDs and digital camera images.	Image, Contrast, and Perceptual
Presentation - Creates saturated colors but does not match printed colors precisely to displayed colors. In-gamut colors, such as flesh tones, are rendered well. This style is similar to the Photographic rendering intent.	Artwork and graphs in presentations. This style can be used for mixed pages that contain presentation graphics and photographs.	Saturation, Graphics
Relative Colorimetric - Provides white point transformation between the source and destination white points. For example, the bluish-white color (gray) of a monitor is replaced by paper white. This style avoids visible borders between blank spaces and white objects.	Advanced use when color matching is important, but you prefer white colors in the document to print as paper white.	Relative Colorimetric
Absolute Colorimetric - Provides no white point transformation between the source and destination white points. For example, the bluish-white color (gray) is not replaced by paper white.	Situations when exact colors are needed and visible borders are not distracting.	Absolute Colorimetric

ImageViewer Curves

The ImageViewer Curves print option lets you apply color curve edits from ImageViewer that have been saved on the server as a preset.

ImageViewer in Command WorkStation can be used to edit the CMYK curves of a job on the Fiery ES. These curve edits can be saved as a preset and applied to other jobs. Use the ImageViewer Curves option to select a preset for your job.

Factory-supplied curve edits apply some typical color corrections:

- No correction
- Lighter highlights
- Midtone boost
- Shadow detail
- Reduce C (cyan) cast
- Reduce M (magenta) cast
- Reduce Y (yellow) cast

After the job is processed, the edits become part of the job and are no longer visible as edits when you view the job in ImageViewer.

Optimize RGB transparency

The Optimize RGB transparency option corrects color errors that can occur in jobs that contain transparent RGB or Lab objects.

Optimize RGB transparency affects jobs with the following characteristics:

- The job is in PDF format (submitted to the Fiery ES as a PDF file, not submitted by printing from an application).
- The job contains transparent RGB or Lab objects. They might be objects that you specified as transparent using an application that supports this capability, or they might be objects with a special effect, such as a drop shadow, that uses transparency to achieve the effect.
- The transparent objects overlap, creating an area of mixed color.

If you turn on Optimize RGB transparency, the Fiery ES uses the correct RGB source profile and rendering intent when converting the overlapping RGB colors to CMYK during the PDF-to-PostScript conversion. If you turn off Optimize RGB transparency, the area of overlapping colors might print with incorrect color or undesirable artifacts.

Optimize RGB transparency can result in a longer processing time, especially for variable data printing (VDP) jobs that contain multiple individual PDF pages. We recommend that you turn on Optimize RGB transparency only when necessary to achieve correct color output.

You can specify Optimize RGB transparency for a job in Job Properties in Command WorkStation, Hot Folders, or a virtual printer.

When you print from the printer driver, the Optimize RGB transparency option does not appear because jobs printed from the printer driver are always submitted to the Fiery ES as PostScript jobs, which are not affected by Optimize RGB transparency.

Output profile

The Output profile print option specifies the output profile used to process a job. Color data in a print job is converted to the color space of the printer, which is described by the output profile.

In addition, the calibration that is associated with the output profile is applied to the job before printing.

The Fiery ES includes one or more default output profiles, each created for a specific media type. You can also import your own output profiles to the Fiery ES.

Use job defined settings

Rather than select a specific output profile for your job, you can let the Fiery ES determine the output profile automatically. The color mode and media type used in the print job determine the profile, or if the job uses media from Paper Catalog, the output profile specified in Paper Catalog is used.

Note: Because only one output profile is supported for the Fiery ES, all available media are tied to the one available profile. The Use job defined settings option is not available.

Device link profiles

If a CMYK-to-CMYK or RGB-to-CMYK device link profile is available for the specified output profile and source profile, Device link profile selected is displayed below the Output profile drop-down list box. When a device link profile has been selected, the specific device link profile name is displayed below the Source profile drop-down list box. The other source settings in the area are disabled as they are not applicable in the device link profile workflow.

In this case, the selected output profile is not used for color management, since the device link profile is used.

Print RGB/CMYK using gray only

When the Print RGB gray using black only option is turned on, any RGB color that has equal R, G, and B values is printed as K-only black instead of CMYK black. Similarly, when Print CMYK gray using black only is turned on, any CMYK color where C, M, and Y are 0 (zero), and K is any value is printed as K-only black instead of CMYK black.

You can turn on Print RGB gray using black only or Print CMYK gray using black only for either Text/Graphics or Text/Graphics/Images. "Graphics" refers to vector graphics. "Images" refers to bitmap images.

Note: You can also turn on Print gray using black only for the Grayscale source profile, with the same options of Text/Graphics and Text/Graphics/Images.

The following limitations apply:

- The Print RGB gray using black only and Print CMYK gray using black only options have no effect on a job that is sent as separations.
- If CMYK rendering intent is set to Pure Primaries, Print CMYK gray using black only does not affect the output.
- If Separate RGB/Lab to CMYK source is turned on, Print RGB gray using black only is turned off. Likewise, if Print RGB gray using black only is turned on, you cannot turn on Separate RGB/Lab to CMYK source.
- If Black Text and Graphics is set to Pure Black On or Rich Black On, it takes precedence over Print RGB gray using black only and Print CMYK gray using black only for 100% black text and graphics.
- If a gray is specified as a spot color, Print RGB gray using black only and Print CMYK gray using black only do not affect that gray.

RGB rendering intent

The RGB rendering intent option specifies a rendering intent for RGB/Lab-to-CMYK color conversion. This conversion can be optimized for the type of color image being printed.

To control the appearance of images, such as prints from office applications or RGB photographs from Adobe Photoshop, select the appropriate rendering intent. The Fiery ES allows you to select from the four rendering intents currently found in industry-standard ICC profiles.

Note: If you experience tone reproduction problems, use the Photographic setting.

Rendering intent	Best used for	Equivalent ICC rendering intent
Photographic - Typically results in less-saturated output than presentation rendering when printing out-of-gamut colors. This style preserves tonal relationships in images.	Photographs, including scans and images from stock photography CDs and digital camera images.	Image, Contrast, and Perceptual
Presentation - Creates saturated colors but does not match printed colors precisely to displayed colors. In-gamut colors, such as flesh tones, are rendered well. This style is similar to the Photographic rendering intent.	Artwork and graphs in presentations. This style can be used for mixed pages that contain presentation graphics and photographs.	Saturation, Graphics
Relative Colorimetric - Provides white point transformation between the source and destination white points. For example, the bluish-white color (gray) of a monitor is replaced by paper white. This style avoids visible borders between blank spaces and white objects.	Advanced use when color matching is important, but you prefer white colors in the document to print as paper white. This style may also be used with PostScript color management to affect CMYK or RGB data for simulation purposes.	Relative Colorimetric
Absolute Colorimetric - Provides no white point transformation between the source and destination white points. For example, the bluish-white color (gray) is not replaced by paper white.	Situations when exact colors are needed and visible borders are not distracting. This style may also be used with PostScript color management to affect CMYK or RGB data for simulation purposes.	Absolute Colorimetric

RGB source, CMYK source, and Grayscale source

The RGB source, CMYK source, and Grayscale source print options allow you to define the color spaces of the RGB, CMYK, and grayscale data, respectively, in your document so that the appropriate color conversion occurs on the Fiery ES.

Commonly used color spaces are available on the Fiery ES. For others, you can import CMYK and RGB custom profiles to the Fiery ES. Custom grayscale profiles cannot be imported.

RGB/Lab source

When you specify a profile for RGB source, the Fiery ES overrides source color space definitions or profiles that other color management systems may have specified. For example, if your document contains an embedded RGB profile, the RGB source setting overrides it.

When you specify an RGB source profile, the output from the Fiery ES is consistent across platforms. The RGB source options are as follows:

- EFIRGB - Specifies an EFI-defined color space recommended for users who have no detailed information about their RGB data.
- sRGB (PC) - A Microsoft and Hewlett-Packard recommended color space designed for typical home and office applications.
- Apple Standard - Specifies the color space of an older Mac OS computer monitor.
- Adobe RGB (1998) - An Adobe-defined color space, used in some prepress workflows as the default working space for Adobe Photoshop.
- eciRGB v2 - The European Color Initiative (ECI) recommended space for use as an RGB working color space and color data exchange format for ad agencies, publishers, reproduction, and printing houses.
- Fiery RGB v5 - An EFI-defined color space recommended for users of office applications. This color space is similar to EFIRGB but is larger and can provide a more desirable blue output.

In cases where you do not want RGB source to override another specified source color space, select the Use RGB embedded profile option.

If the Use RGB embedded profile option is enabled, the Fiery ES honors objects in the document with RGB profiles, and objects without profiles are color managed with the RGB source profile from Job Properties.

CMYK source

The CMYK source option can be set to any CMYK source profile that is present on the Fiery ES.

To properly manage color in a printed image that was separated using an ICC profile, the same profile must be specified for printing the image.

The CMYK source profile setting you specify depends on the CMYK profile or press standard for which the CMYK data was separated. This option affects CMYK data only.

- For images that were separated using a custom separation (such as a separation produced with an ICC profile), select the profile used for RGB to CMYK conversions in the prepress workflow on the Fiery ES with the CMYK source setting.
- For images that were separated for a press standard, select the press standard as the CMYK source setting.

If the job contains an embedded CMYK profile, select the Use CMYK embedded profile option. The embedded profile is applied to CMYK data.

The CMYK source option can be set to any CMYK source profile that is present on the Fiery ES.

If you do not want CMYK data in a job to be converted to the output color space, you can select one of the following settings:

- **Bypass conversion** - This setting sends the original CMYK data in the job to the printer without conversion, but with calibration applied.
- **ColorWise OFF** - This setting sends the original CMYK data in the job to the printer without calibration applied and without converting the CMYK data. The CMYK data is still subject to the total ink or toner limit, however.

The ColorWise OFF setting is available for a specific job but it cannot be the default setting on the Fiery ES. You select this setting for a specific job.

Note: When you print with the ColorWise OFF setting, make sure that the options you choose in your application do not cause the application to modify CMYK data. You must specify no color management in the application when you print with the ColorWise OFF setting.

Grayscale source

The Fiery ES supports separate processing of jobs with Device Gray and ICC Based Grayscale through their own color conversion. For FS200/FS200 Pro and earlier, the grayscale color spaces were processed through the CMYK color path.

The Grayscale source profile setting provides factory-installed grayscale profiles to use for source-to-output profile color conversion. Users cannot import their own grayscale ICC profiles.

If the job contains an embedded profile associated to grayscale objects in the document, select the Use Gray embedded profile option.

The Grayscale source option can be set to any of the factory-installed grayscale source profiles that are present on the Fiery ES.

Separate RGB/Lab to CMYK source

The Separate RGB/Lab to CMYK source option determines how RGB colors (as well as Lab and XYZ colors) are converted to CMYK. This option defines the color spaces that are used by the Fiery ES to separate the RGB data into CMYK values.

- When Separate RGB/Lab to CMYK source is turned on, all RGB colors are first converted to the CMYK color space defined by the CMYK source print option before being converted to the CMYK color space of the printer (as defined by the Output profile print option). The result is a simulation of the RGB colors that would be output from a printer with the characteristics defined by the CMYK source profile.

With Separate RGB/Lab to CMYK source, for example, if a high-quality ICC profile is available for another printer, your printer can simulate the behavior of that other printer.

- When Separate RGB/Lab to CMYK source is turned off, all RGB colors are converted directly to the CMYK color space of the printer (as defined by the Output profile print option).

Spot color matching

The Spot color matching option provides automatic matching of spot colors with their best CMYK equivalents.

- **On** - The Fiery ES uses a built-in table to generate the closest CMYK matches of spot colors your printer can produce. (New tables are generated when you add new output profiles.)

With Spot-On, the Fiery ES uses the CMYK matches determined through Spot-On.

- **The Use spot group menu** allows you to select a spot color group that Fiery ES searches first for spot color definitions during file processing. When new spot color groups have been created in Device Center > Resources > Spot Colors, the new groups are listed in the Use spot group menu. If a spot color is not found in the selected list, the Fiery ES searches all other spot color groups for a matching spot color name. If the name is not found, the spot color is rendered with the alternate color in the document.
- **Off** - The Fiery ES processes spot colors as CMYK data and uses the alternate color space provided by the spot color. By default, most applications use the CMYK equivalents defined by the spot color manufacturer, such as PANTONE. These are the same CMYK equivalents used by applications that include spot color libraries.

Note: Spot colors that are not included in the built-in table are processed with the Alternate Color Space.

For jobs that include spot colors, turn Spot color matching on unless you are printing press simulations. In that case, turn Spot color matching off and select the appropriate CMYK source.

For PDF and PostScript jobs that include spot colors that are not in the built-in table, turning Spot color matching on causes the alternate color space to be used. The Fiery ES references the built-in table to generate the closest CMYK matches of the original spot color.

Note: Use Spot color matching only when printing composites, not when printing separations.

Substitute colors

Substitute colors are colors that, when called for in a document by their RGB or CMYK values, are substituted with a different color that is defined in the Spot-On color dictionary. This permits exact color control and overrides individual RGB and CMYK colors.

Spot-On allows you to create a list of substitute colors. To enable substitute colors for a job, turn on the Substitute colors option.

Note: You cannot use Substitute colors at the same time that you use Postflight.

When you use Substitute colors at the same time that you use Spot color matching, be sure that the CMYK color that you want to replace with a substitute color is not a CMYK color that is also defined as a spot color. Otherwise, the spot color may be replaced with the substitute color, which may not be the result that you expect.

For more information about creating and using substitute colors, see *Command WorkStation Help*.

Use embedded profile

You can specify whether the Fiery ES uses the source profile (either RGB or CMYK or grayscale) that is embedded in the print job rather than the source profile specified in the print settings.

RGB

If you turn on Use RGB embedded profile, the Fiery ES ignores the RGB source option and uses the RGB profile embedded in the print job (if any) as the RGB source profile. If you turn off this option, the Fiery ES uses the profile specified in the RGB source option.

CMYK

If you turn on Use CMYK embedded profile, the Fiery ES ignores the CMYK source option and uses the CMYK profile embedded in the print job (if any) as the CMYK source profile. If you turn off this option, the Fiery ES uses the profile specified in the CMYK source option.

Grayscale

If you turn on Use Gray embedded profile, the Fiery ES honors the embedded grayscale profile information for objects tagged with a grayscale profile and uses the source grayscale profile for gray objects without a grayscale profile.

Where to specify color print options

You can set color print options for all jobs by setting the default values on the Fiery ES. You can set the color print options for a specific job to different values if the default values are not what you want for the job.

You specify default values for color print options in Color Setup in Command WorkStation. You can also set default values from Fiery ES Setup, as described in *Configuration and Setup*. The defaults apply to all subsequent print jobs unless you override them.

Note: A job uses the Fiery ES default settings at the time it is sent to the Fiery ES Hold queue, not at the time the job is processed for printing.

How you set specific color print options for a particular job depends on how you submit the job to the Fiery ES.

- When you print a job from an application through the printer driver, specify color print options using the settings that appear in the printer driver.

The printer driver sends a PostScript file to the Fiery ES that incorporates the settings for the color print options you selected.

- When you print a job through Hot Folders or a virtual printer, specify color print options in the Job Properties settings. These settings override the default settings on the Fiery ES.
- When a job is in the Hold queue of the Fiery ES, specify color print options through the Job Properties settings in Command WorkStation. These settings override the default settings on the Fiery ES.

The following color print options are located in both (1) the Color tab of the printer driver or Job Properties and (2) in Color Setup in Device Center:

- Auto trapping
- Black overprint (for pure black)
- Black point compensation
- Black text and graphics
- CMYK rendering intent
- CMYK source or device link
- Combine separations
- Composite overprint
- Grayscale rendering intent
- Grayscale source
- Optimize RGB transparency (Job Properties only)
- Output profile
- Print CMYK gray using black only
- Print gray using black only
- Print RGB gray using black only
- RGB rendering intent
- RGB source or device link
- Separate RGB/Lab to CMYK source
- Spot color matching
- Substitute colors
- Use CMYK embedded profiles
- Use Gray embedded profiles
- Use RGB embedded profiles

Print from an application

To print from an application, you use the printer driver for your operating system (Windows or Mac OS).

- For information about how to install the printer driver, set up the Fiery ES for printing, and set print options with the printer driver, see *Printing*.
- When you print a job from a Mac OS application using the printer driver, you must also set color-management print options appropriately.

Print with color settings in Mac OS

When you print a job from a Mac OS application using the printer driver, you must set color-management print options appropriately.

- 1 Select Print in your application.
- 2 Expand the dialog box, if necessary, by clicking the arrow next to the Printer name.
- 3 Click Preview, select Color Matching from the drop-down list, and then click In Printer.
- 4 Set other print options as needed, and then click Print to send your job.

For information about how to set print options with the printer driver for Mac OS, see *Printing*.

Color profiles

The Fiery ES includes by default a number of RGB and CMYK profiles that you can use for printing through the RGB Source, CMYK/Grayscale Source, and Output Profile settings for a job.

You can manage the profiles on the Fiery ES with Profile Manager in Command WorkStation, which allows you to import ICC profiles to the Fiery ES, export profiles, delete profiles (except for default profiles), and set the properties of profiles. You can also create custom CMYK source or output profiles by editing an existing profile and saving it as a new profile.

You can install (copy) additional ICC profiles from the User Software DVD to your computer. Use the ICC profiles with applications that support ICC standards, such as Adobe Photoshop.

ICC profiles in the user software package

The user software package contains additional ICC profiles that you can install (copy) to your computer.

Adobe ICC Profiles folder

The Adobe ICC Profiles folder is located inside the Windows Color Files\Legacy\ICC Profiles folder or Mac Color Files/Legacy/ICC Profiles folder.

The profiles in this folder were created by Adobe Systems, Inc. For more information, see the documents included in the folder.

CMYK Profiles:

- CoatedFOGRA27.icc
- CoatedFOGRA39.icc
- CoatedGRACoL2006.icc
- JapanColor2001Coated.icc
- JapanColor2001Uncoated.icc
- JapanColor2002Newspaper.icc
- JapanColor2003WebCoated.icc
- JapanWebCoated.icc
- UncoatedFOGRA29.icc
- USWebCoatedSWOP.icc
- USWebUncoated.icc
- WebCoatedFOGRA28.icc

- WebCoatedSWOP2006Grade3.icc
- WebCoatedSWOP2006Grade5.icc

RGB Profiles:

- AdobeRGB1998.icc
- AppleRGB.icc
- ColorMatchRGB.icc
- PAL_SECAM.icc
- SMPTE-C.icc
- VideoHD.icc
- VideoNTSC.icc
- VideoPAL.icc

ECI folder

The ECI folder is located inside the Windows Color Files\Legacy\ICC Profiles folder or Mac Color Files/Legacy/ICC Profiles folder.

The profiles were created by the European Color Initiative (ECI). For more information, see the documents included in the CMYK Profiles and RGB Profiles folders, as well as the ECI web site at www.eci.org.

CMYK Profiles:

- ISOcoated_v2_300_eci.icc
- ISOcoated_v2_eci.icc
- ISOuncoatedyellowish.icc
- PSO_Coated_300_NPscreen_ISO12647_eci.icc
- PSO_Coated_NPscreen_ISO12647_eci.icc
- PSO_LWC_Improved_eci.icc
- PSO_LWC_Standard_eci.icc
- PSO_MFC_Paper_eci.icc
- PSO_SNP_Paper_eci.icc
- PSO_Uncoated_ISO12647_eci.icc
- PSO_Uncoated_NPscreen_ISO12647_eci.icc
- SC_paper_eci.icc

EFI Support folder

The EFI Support folder is located inside the Windows Color Files\Legacy\ICC Profiles folder or Mac Color Files/Legacy/ICC Profiles folder.

These profiles were created by EFI. For more information, see the General Requirements for Applications in Commercial Offset Lithography (GRACoL) website at www.gracol.org, the Fogra website at www.fogra.org, and the Specifications Web Offset Publications (SWOP) website at www.swop.org.

CMYK Profiles:

- EFIEURO.icc
- EFISWOP.icc
- Enterprise CMYK.icc
- GRACoL2006_Coated1_EFI.icc
- ISOCoated.icc
- ISOCoated_FOGRA39L_EFI.icc
- ISOUncoated_FOGRA29L_EFI.icc
- SWOP2006_Coated3_EFI.icc
- SWOP2006_Coated5_EFI.icc

RGB Profiles:

- EFI Fiery RGB Chroma.icc
- EFI Fiery RGB Chroma+.icc
- EFI Fiery RGB Chroma++.icc

Note: The EFI Fiery RGB Chroma profiles are designed to provide saturated colors, especially in nighttime images, while maintaining photographic detail. Of the three profiles, EFI Fiery RGB Chroma.icc has the least effect and EFI Fiery RGB Chroma++.icc has the greatest effect.

- EFIRGB.ICC
- Fiery RGB v2.icc
- Fiery RGB v4.icc
- Fiery RGB v5.icc
- RGB D65 (Splash).icc

Japan Profiles:

- EFIDIC.ICC
- EFIJMPA2.icc
- EFIJMPA3.icc
- JapanColor2011Coated.icc
- JC2001_type1_EFI.icc
- JC2001_type2_EFI.icc
- JC2001_type3_EFI.icc
- JC2001_type4_EFI.icc
- TOYO Offset Coated 2.0.icc

Add ICC profiles from the user software package

The user software package includes a number of ICC profiles that you can add to the Fiery ES:

For most ICC-aware applications, you must install the files in the Color folder (Windows) or the Library/ColorSync/Profiles folder (Mac OS). For use with the Fiery ES, you can copy the files to a folder of your choice.

Note: On Mac OS, see the ColorSync documentation for setting ColorSync profiles, such as EFIRGB.

- 1 Install the profiles on your computer.
- 2 Use Command WorkStation to import the files to the Fiery ES.

Install ICC profiles on a Windows computer

- 1 Insert the User Software DVD into the DVD drive.
- 2 Open the folder (Windows Color Files) containing the profile.
- 3 Right-click the profile that you want and click Install Profile.

The profiles are installed automatically to the Windows\System32\spool\drivers\color folder on your computer.

Install ICC profiles on a Mac OS computer

You must log on with Administrator privileges.

- 1 Insert the User Software DVD into the DVD drive.
- 2 Open the folder (Mac Color Files) containing the profile.
- 3 Copy the profiles into Library/ColorSync/Profiles.

Color Bars folder

The Color Bars folder is located inside the Windows Color Files folder or Mac Color Files folder. These files are used for the Control Bar feature.

The Control Bar feature is available with the optional Fiery Productivity Package.

You can copy these additional color files from the User Software DVD to your computer.

- FieryColorBar.eps
- Ugra Fogra-MediaWedge V2.2x_EFlv1.eps
- Ugra Fogra-MediaWedge V3.0a_EFlv1.eps

Calibration

Calibrating the Fiery ES ensures consistent and reliable color output. Calibration adjusts the ink or toner densities of a job to compensate for the difference between the expected (target) densities of the printer and the actual (measured) densities that the printer outputs.

Periodic calibration is necessary to monitor the actual output of the printer. To calibrate the Fiery ES, you measure the densities of printed color patches on a page.

Calibration is applied to all jobs, but you can disable it for a specific job. The ColorWise Off setting for the CMYK/Grayscale Source option disables calibration (and color management) for CMYK data in a job. You might want to disable calibration for testing purposes, for example.

Changing calibration has the potential to affect *all* jobs for *all* users, so consider limiting the number of people authorized to perform calibration. Set an Administrator password to control access to calibration (see *Configuration and Setup*).

Check calibration status

You can check when the Fiery ES was last calibrated in Command WorkStation.

Check the calibration status for a job

- In Command WorkStation, in Job Center, select the job.
The time of the most recent calibration is displayed in the lower-right corner.

Check the status of a specific calibration

- 1 In Command WorkStation, in Device Center, click the General tab, click Tools, and then click Manage (under Calibrate).

The list of calibration settings on the Fiery ES appears in Calibrator.

- 2 Find the calibration in the list and check the Last calibrated value.

Default measurements indicates the factory settings, which means that the Fiery ES has not been calibrated.

You can configure Command WorkStation to optionally display a warning or suspend printing if the calibration of a job is out of date. For more information, see the online help.

Calibrator in Command WorkStation

You can calibrate the Fiery ES with Calibrator in Command WorkStation.

Calibrator provides a choice of measurement methods depending on the methods supported by your Fiery ES:

- ColorCal (in Command WorkStation) - Calibration method that uses the built-in scanner of the printer to measure toner densities.

For more information about this method, see the online help.

- EFI ES-1000 or ES-2000 hand-held spectrophotometer

For more information about this method, see the online help.

- KonicaMinolta FD-5BT - KonicaMinolta FD-5BT hand-held spectrodensitometer

This method is not supported for calibrating the Fiery ES.

Multiple users can connect to one Fiery ES with Command WorkStation, but only one user at a time can use Calibrator. If you try to calibrate when another user is using Command WorkStation to calibrate, an error message is displayed.

Before you save calibration measurements, you can check the calibration by printing a test page to see if it prints as you expect. It may also be helpful to print your own test page with the colors and job settings that are important to you.

Calibrator allows you to view the calibration measurements as a graph of input versus output curves for C, M, Y, and K.

- If the maximum measured density of a colorant is less than the target value, print a test page to check the output, especially areas with a lot of that particular colorant.
- If the maximum measured density is greater than or equal to the target value, this is usually not a problem.

If the curves are not smooth, it may be because the printer does not print uniformly across the page. The calibrated output may still be acceptable.

One way to check uniformity is to print a test job that covers the page with a single colorant (C, M, Y, or K) at the percentage that you want to check. Lack of uniformity is usually visible with values between 15% and 30%. This page must be printed without color management (CMYK Source set to Bypass Conversion). If lack of uniformity is visible, we recommend that you calibrate using one of the sorted patch layouts, which helps to minimize banding in gradients. However, calibration cannot fix the lack of uniformity of the printer.

Calibrate the Fiery ES with Command WorkStation

1 Start Calibrator by doing one of the following:

- In Command WorkStation, in Job Center, click the Calibrate icon.
- In Command WorkStation, in Device Center, click the General tab, click Tools, and then click Calibrate.
- In Command WorkStation, in Job Center, right-click a held job and select Calibrate job.

In this case, Calibrator automatically selects the calibration setting used by the job.

- 2 Follow the procedure for your measurement instrument.

For more information, see the online help.

Calibration from the printer control panel

You can calibrate the Fiery ES from the printer control panel with ColorCal, without using Command WorkStation.

When you calibrate from the printer control panel, the measurements are applied to the calibration setting associated with the default output profile that is selected in Color Setup.

If an Administrator or Operator password has been set, you will need it to perform calibration from the printer control panel.

It is also possible to remove calibration measurements (and restore the default measurements) from the Fiery ES using the printer control panel. In general, it is not necessary, because any new calibration replaces the existing one if the same calibration setting is selected. Removing calibration affects all calibration settings.

Calibrate the Fiery ES from the printer control panel

To calibrate the Fiery ES, you print a page that contains color patches and use the printer's scanner to measure the color patches. The measured values are saved and used for the calibration setting associated with the media that the page was printed on.

- 1 When the printer is Idle, press Controller on the Machine tab to enter the Fiery Color Server display.
- 2 Log in as an administrator.
- 3 Press the Tools tab, and then press Calibrate.
- 4 Choose the paper source for the measurement page and press Print.

The ColorCal Calibration page is comprised of swatches of color that are measured by the printer's scanner and then compared to the target color values.

If scanner calibration is enabled for the Fiery ES in Calibrator preferences (in Command WorkStation), a ColorCal Scanner page is printed as well as the ColorCal Calibration page.

We recommend that you always calibrate the scanner before calibrating the Fiery ES.

- 5 Retrieve the printed pages.
- 6 If a ColorCal Scanner page was printed, place the grayscale strip and Color Control patches according to the instructions on the page, and press Measure to initiate the scan.
- 7 When the display indicates that the measurement was successful, press Continue.
- 8 Follow the instructions on the screen and on the ColorCal Calibration page to place the page on the glass platen along with the grayscale strip, and press Measure to initiate the scan.
- 9 When the display indicates that the measurement was successful, press Continue.
- 10 Optionally, press Test Print to print a test page.

You can examine the test page to decide if the calibration is successful.

11 If the calibration is successful, press Apply to save the measurements.

Managing calibration settings

Every output profile on the Fiery ES must be associated with a calibration setting. The calibration setting provides the Fiery ES with density measurements of each of the printed colorants, for specific printing conditions (for example, media type). This data, along with the expected density response of the printer, allows the Fiery ES to apply corrections to color values that are sent to the printer, to achieve the calibrated output.

An output profile can be associated with only one calibration setting, but the same calibration setting can be used by more than one output profile.

A calibration setting must be associated with at least one output profile, otherwise the calibration setting will never be used for printing.

Output profiles and calibration settings

The Fiery ES has one or more factory-supplied output profiles. These output profiles and their associated calibration settings may produce acceptable color quality. However, you may need to create custom calibration settings and output profiles, depending on your situation.

	Your paper	Action	Notes
1	Recommended paper for a factory-supplied output profile (the paper that the profile is based on)	Printing with the output profile produces acceptable color. You do not need to create a calibration setting or custom profile.	You can find the recommended paper for an output profile in Calibrator.
2	Paper similar to a factory-supplied profile's recommended paper	You might be able to use the output profile. The print settings required for your paper (for example, media type and media weight) must match the print settings required by the recommended paper. If the color quality is acceptable, you do not need to create a calibration setting or custom profile.	The output profile name usually indicates the general type of paper (for example, plain, coated, or heavy). You can find the print settings required for the recommended paper in Calibrator.
3	Paper that is similar to a factory-supplied profile's recommended paper, but uses different print settings	You might still be able to use a factory-supplied output profile, if you create a custom calibration setting and use it to calibrate the Fiery ES with your paper.	You can create a custom calibration setting in Calibrator.
4	Paper that does not yield acceptable color with any factory-supplied profile	You must create a custom calibration setting and custom profile.	Use profile-generating software to create a custom profile.

Note: Recommended papers are chosen for color quality, as well as other factors, such as feeding reliability and quality of transfer.

Find recommended paper and print settings

You can find the recommended paper and print settings for a particular output profile in Calibrator.

1 In Command WorkStation, in Device Center, click the Color Setup tab and click Color Management.

2 Select the output profile and note the name of the calibration setting displayed to the right.

3 In Device Center, click the General tab, click Tools, and then click Manage under Calibrate.

The list of calibration settings on the Fiery ES appears in Calibrator.

4 Select the calibration setting from the list.

The recommended paper is shown in the list and the required print settings are displayed in the calibration-related properties.

5 Click Close to close the window.

Custom calibration settings

If you are printing on a paper that is similar to the recommended paper, but uses different print settings, you might still be able to use the output profile, but you must create a custom calibration setting. If the color quality is acceptable, you do not need to create a custom profile.

You can add a new calibration setting that you can then select when performing calibration. You can delete a custom calibration setting. You cannot delete a factory-supplied calibration setting.

For information about adding a custom calibration setting, see the online help.

Custom calibration settings and output profiles

If you determine that none of the factory-supplied output profiles produces acceptable color with your paper, you must create a custom calibration setting in Calibrator and a custom profile using profile-generating software.

To create a custom calibration setting, you print a page of color patches on the Fiery ES using your paper and measure the page with Calibrator.

If Fiery Color Profiler Suite is installed on your computer, you can start it from within Calibrator to create a custom output profile immediately after creating a custom calibration setting.

Note: Before creating a custom calibration setting and custom output profile, make sure that the printer is calibrated (if calibration is supported on the printer). For information about performing printer calibration, see the documentation that accompanies the printer.

Understanding calibration

Calibration generates adjustments to ink or toner densities that account for the difference between the actual densities (measurements) and the expected response (target).

- Measurements represent the actual color behavior of the printer.
- Calibration settings contain sets of measurements that represent the output for specific printing conditions, such as media and print options.
- Each calibration setting is associated with a calibration target that describes the expected behavior of the printer.

After you calibrate the Fiery ES for a specific calibration setting, the measurements are stored. These measurements are used to adjust output densities when you print with the output profile associated with the calibration setting.

Although the needs of most users are met by the default calibration setting, the Fiery ES allows you to select a calibration setting to customize calibration for specialized jobs.

Every output profile has an associated calibration setting. If you have not specified one, the calibration setting associated with the default output profile is used.

How calibration works

Success in obtaining satisfactory print quality from the Fiery ES depends on many factors. Among the most important are establishing and maintaining optimal ink or toner densities. The density is the measure of the light absorbed by a surface. By carefully regulating densities, you obtain consistent printed color from print run to print run.

Calibration allows you to:

- Maximize the color reproduction capabilities of the Fiery ES.
- Ensure consistent color quality from print run to print run.
- Produce consistent output across more than one Fiery ES.
- Achieve better color matches when reproducing spot colors, such as PANTONE colors or other named color systems.
- Optimize the Fiery ES for using ColorWise rendering intents, CMYK simulations, and ICC profiles.

Even with a calibrated system, ink or toner density is affected by the settings of the printer, humidity, and temperature. Density also tends to drift over time. Uneven density on paper affects calibration results. Regular measurement detects day-to-day variations in density, gradation, and color reproduction, and calibration corrects them.

Calibration works by calculating adjustments that compensate for the difference between actual (measured) and desired (target) density values. These calibration adjustments are often depicted as mathematical curves for each of the colorants.

When to calibrate

Calibrate the Fiery ES at least once a day, depending on the volume of print jobs. If it is very important to maintain consistent color, or your printer is subject to wide fluctuations in temperature or humidity, calibrate every few hours.

For optimal performance, calibrate whenever there is a noticeable change in print quality or printing results are not as expected.

If you must split a print job into two or more batches to print at different times, it is important to calibrate before you print each batch. You should also calibrate the Fiery ES after printer maintenance or printer calibration. However, because the printer may be less stable immediately after maintenance, wait until you have printed approximately 50 pages before you calibrate.

Note: Because output from the printer is very sensitive to changes in temperature and humidity, do not install the printer near a window, in direct sunlight, or near a heater or air conditioner. Paper is also sensitive to climate changes. Store it in a cool, dry, stable environment, and keep reams sealed until they are used.

To monitor print quality, print a color reference page. A good reference page includes fully saturated color patches and pale tints of cyan, magenta, yellow, and black. Images with skin tones offer a good basis for comparison. Save and periodically compare the pages you print. If a noticeable change in appearance occurs, calibrate the Fiery ES.

When you examine the reference page, all color patches should be visible, even though they may be very faint in the five to two percent range. Each patch set should show uniform gradation from patch to patch as the color lightens from 100% to zero.

If the solid density patches (100% cyan, magenta, yellow, or black) look less saturated over time, show the pages to your service technician to determine whether adjusting the printer can improve output.

Spot-On

The Spot color matching print option automatically matches spot colors with their best CMYK equivalents so that spot colors can be simulated using the CMYK colors. However, you may want to adjust the default CMYK equivalents to achieve a better match for your specific printing conditions. You can modify spot colors with the Spot-On spot color editor (Spot Colors in Command WorkStation).

Note: Spot colors are also called "named" colors because a color name is used to represent a specific CMYK value.

Spot Colors comes pre-loaded with libraries of named colors such as those from PANTONE, HKS, TOYO, and DIC. The spot color libraries store the original colors with their device-independent definitions (Lab values). For each output profile on the Fiery ES, the Fiery ES computes the best available CMYK reproduction of each spot color. Each time a new profile is generated or updated, the Fiery ES automatically recalculates the best CMYK equivalents.

Spot-On supports other features related to spot colors:

- In Spot Colors, you can create a list of "substitute" colors. These are colors that, when called for in a document by their RGB or CMYK values, are substituted with a different color having the CMYK values from the Spot Colors color definition. This permits exact color control and overrides individual RGB and CMYK colors.

For more information, see [Substitute colors](#) on page 22.

- When a job that specifies overprinting for spot-color objects is printed with the Composite overprint print option, Spot-On enables the correct color processing.

For more information, see [Composite overprint](#) on page 15.

Spot Colors in Command WorkStation

The Spot Colors feature is a spot color (named color) manager in Command WorkStation that allows you to edit spot color definitions on the Fiery ES and create custom spot color definitions. Spot Colors is a part of the Spot-On feature. If Spot-On is available for your Fiery ES and is activated on the Fiery ES, you can adjust and manage lists of spot colors and their CMYK equivalents.

The Spot-On feature is in Command WorkStation, in Device Center, in the Spot Colors window under the Resources tab.

You can create a list of "substitute" colors. These are colors that, when called for in a document by their RGB or CMYK values, are substituted with a different color having the CMYK values from the Spot Colors color definition. This permits exact color control and overrides individual RGB and CMYK colors.

For more information about Spot Colors and Substitute Colors, see *Command WorkStation Help*.

How Spot-On works

Spot-On allows you to adjust and manage lists of spot colors and their CMYK equivalents. The matching lists of spot colors and CMYK values are known as spot color dictionaries. Spot-On allows you to maintain multiple spot color dictionaries for each output profile on the Fiery ES.

In Spot-On, you specify the job properties that you use to print a job. Based on the settings, Spot-On determines the output profile and its associated spot color dictionary.

If you select Output profile X and redefine PANTONE 123 from 30%M to 50%M using Spot-On, the output will reflect 50%M when you print a job with Output profile X. If you print a job with Output profile Y, you will get the original value.

If you select Output profile X and create a custom color named "My Purple" and define it as 80%C 40%M, the Fiery ES automatically calculates the Lab values using Output profile X and creates new CMYK values for use with Output profile Y.

To use the Spot-On features with named colors, you must enable the Spot Color Matching print option.

Note: Spot colors that are identified by name are printed with their defined CMYK values. Edits to an output profile made in Command WorkStation do not affect how spot colors are printed.

Any edits made to a job with the color adjustment features in ImageViewer affect all of the colors in the job, including spot colors.

Monitor settings

This feature requires that a job be displayed with correct colors on your monitor. To display the colors correctly on your monitor, you must set up the monitor according to the manufacturer's recommendations, and specify the correct monitor profile for your monitor.

Specify the following settings for the monitor:

- On the monitor: Brightness, Contrast, and Color Temperature
- In the operating system: Resolution, Refresh rate, and Number of colors

For more information about setting up the monitor and the monitor profile, see the documentation that accompanies the monitor.



Fiery® ES IC-418

Utilities

© 2017 Electronics For Imaging, Inc. The information in this publication is covered under Legal Notices for this product.

27 October 2017

45174713



Contents

- Introduction 5
- Terminology, conventions, and documentation resources 5
- Installing user software 7
 - Installing user software on a Windows computer 7
 - Install user software on a Windows computer from media 7
 - Modify user software from media 8
 - Install user software on a Windows computer from WebTools 8
 - Uninstall user software on a Windows computer 9
 - Installing user software on a Mac OS computer 9
 - Install user software on Mac OS from media 9
 - Install user software on Mac OS from WebTools 10
 - Uninstall user software on Mac OS 10
 - Using Fiery Software Manager 10
- Command WorkStation 12
 - Installing Command WorkStation 12
 - Connecting Command WorkStation 13
 - Configure the connection to the Fiery ES 13
 - Using Command WorkStation 13
- Mixed Media 14
 - Define media for selected pages 14
 - Insert blank pages 15
 - Insert tabs 15
- Soft proofing 17
- Image Enhance 17
 - Image Enhance Visual Editor 17
 - ImageViewer 18
- Troubleshooting connections 18
 - Command WorkStation does not respond 18
 - Create a job error report 19
- Fiery make-ready applications 20
 - Fiery make-ready software kits 20

Enabling Fiery make-ready applications	20
Install a license for your software option	21
Activate a Fiery option manually	22
Install Adobe Acrobat and Enfocus PitStop Edit	22
Fiery make-ready applications help	23
Scan	24
User Box feature on the printer	24
Scan to a User Box	25
Installing Fiery Remote Scan	25
Configuring Fiery Remote Scan	25
To perform an advanced search	26
Using Fiery Remote Scan	26
Retrieving scans using Docs	27
Fiery Hot Folders	28
Using Hot Folders	28
WebTools	29
Pop-up Blocker with WebTools	29
Accessing the WebTools home page	29
Using WebTools	30
Use Mailbox to retrieve scans	30

Introduction

The Fiery® ES IC-418 includes a set of software utilities that allow you to manage the Fiery® ES IC-418, as well as the print workflow and content of jobs on the MFP.

This document provides an overview of how to install, configure, and use the following Fiery® ES IC-418 utilities:

- Fiery Command WorkStation monitors and manages the print workflow of jobs on the Fiery® ES IC-418.
- Fiery Preview provides a soft proof of each sheet surface of a job before it is processed. The visual interface changes dynamically to display any changes made in preparing documents for printing.
- Fiery JobMaster provides advanced PDF-based tools for tab insertion, scanning, page numbering, chapter creation, and late stage editing.
- Fiery Impose applies imposition layouts to jobs for custom printing, binding, and trimming.
- Fiery Compose defines the chapter divisions of a job, specifies ranges of pages on varying types of media, inserts blank media between pages, and inserts tab media containing text labels.
- Fiery Productivity Package offers additional color and production features for operators (or users with Operator or Administrator privileges) to monitor and manage the print workflow of jobs.
- Fiery Remote Scan retrieves a scan on the printer from a remote computer on the network. Includes the Scan TWAIN plug-in module.
- Fiery Hot Folders provide a simple and automated method of sending print jobs to the Fiery® ES IC-418 across the network by allowing documents to be dropped into a folder associated with preset print options.
- Fiery JobFlow provides a browser-based prepress workflow that allows operators to define and automate repetitive tasks such as PDF conversion, preflight, correction of PDF files, image enhancement, document imposition, job ticketing, and approval.
- WebTools manages your Fiery® ES IC-418 remotely from the Internet or your company intranet.

For information about using color management, see *Color Printing*.

For information about Fiery Productivity Package, see *Fiery Productivity Package*.

Terminology, conventions, and documentation resources

This document uses the following terminology and conventions to refer to the Fiery® ES IC-418, printer, and supported operating systems.

Term or convention	Refers to
Aero	Fiery ES (in illustrations and examples)
Command WorkStation	Fiery Command WorkStation

Term or convention	Refers to
Printer	MFP
Fiery ES	Fiery® ES IC-418
Mac OS	All supported Mac operating systems. For a complete list, see System Requirements in <i>Configuration and Setup</i> .
Windows	All supported Windows operating systems. For a complete list, see System Requirements in <i>Configuration and Setup</i> .
 Warning:	A warning concerning operations that may lead to death or injury to persons if not performed correctly. To use the equipment safely, always pay attention to these warnings.
 Caution:	A caution concerning operations that may lead to injury to persons if not performed correctly. To use the equipment safely, always pay attention to these cautions.
 Important:	Operational requirements and restrictions. Be sure to read these items carefully to operate the equipment correctly, and avoid damage to the equipment or property.

The following documentation resources are available for the Fiery® ES IC-418.

Resource	Description
User documentation	Documents in this set: <i>Color Printing</i> , <i>Configuration and Setup</i> , <i>Fiery Productivity Package</i> , <i>Printing</i> , <i>Utilities</i>
Online help	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Help can be accessed directly from each Fiery application or by going to help.efi.com.• Each help system is available as a printable PDF, accessed from the PDF icon in the upper right corner of the Help window.
Additional reference material	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Fiery Color Reference</i> - help.efi.com/ref/colorref/en-us/• <i>Variable Data Printing</i> - help.efi.com/ref/vdp/en-us/• <i>Workflow Examples</i> - help.efi.com/ref/workflows/en-us/• <i>Configure Help</i> - help.efi.com/configure/3.0/en-us/

Installing user software

You can install Fiery ES user software on Windows and Mac OS computers.

Install user software:

- From the User Software DVD
- From the Fiery ES, using the Internet or intranet

Note: Fiery JobFlow is supported on Windows computers only.

If earlier versions of Fiery ES user software are installed on your computer, the installer allows you to uninstall those applications before installing new software.

Note: When you upgrade user software, use the Fiery User Software Installer and follow the instructions by selecting Modify.

For more information, see [Modify user software from media](#) on page 8.

If you do want to uninstall an earlier version of user software, you may want to back up your settings. Back up and restore of Fiery ES resources and settings is available from Command WorkStation. For more information, see *Configuration and Setup* and *Command WorkStation Help*.

After first-time installation of Fiery ES user software, updates are managed by the Fiery Software Manager application. For information, see [Using Fiery Software Manager](#) on page 10.

Note: Before installing Fiery ES user software, you must disconnect any measurement instrument from the computer. Otherwise, after installation the instrument may not be recognized by the software.

Installing user software on a Windows computer

Before installing the software, ensure that your computer meets the minimum system requirements. For system requirements, see *Configuration and Setup*.

The only applications that are not installed by the Fiery User Software Installer are Adobe Acrobat and Enfocus PitStop, for use with Fiery Impose/JobMaster/Compose. For more information, see [Fiery make-ready applications](#) on page 20.

Procedures describe installing from the User Software DVD, or over the Internet, and also modifying the user software.

Install user software on a Windows computer from media

- 1 Insert the User Software DVD into the DVD drive of your computer.

- 2 Follow the on-screen instructions.



Important: Do not attempt to install user software by opening the individual folders for the applications. To modify or remove user software after you install it on your computer, use the Fiery User Software Installer.

Modify user software from media

- 1 Insert the User Software DVD into the DVD drive of your computer.
- 2 In the window that appears, select Modify, Repair, or Remove.
 - **Modify:** Allows you to add new program features or remove currently installed features.
 - **Repair:** Reinstalls all currently installed program features.
 - **Remove:** Removes all currently installed program features.
- 3 Follow the on-screen instructions.

You can also install the user software from the Fiery ES over the Internet or your company intranet, using WebTools. Ask your network administrator for the IP address of the Fiery ES.

Use your Internet browser to access WebTools. For complete information about browser and system requirements, see *Configuration and Setup*.

Install user software on a Windows computer from WebTools

- 1 Start your Internet browser.
- 2 Type the IP address or DNS name of the Fiery ES.

If the home page for the printer appears instead of the WebTools page, click the WebTools link.
- 3 Click SOFTWARE DOWNLOADS.
- 4 Click the link for the software that you want to install.
- 5 Choose Run to open the file or choose Save to save it to your computer.
 - a) If you choose Save, browse to the location where you want to save the USERSWMI.exe file, and then click Save.
 - b) Double-click the USERSWMI.exe file.
- 6 Type the Fiery ES URL, **http://<IP address>**, when prompted.
- 7 Follow the on-screen instructions.

Uninstall user software on a Windows computer

To remove user software after you have installed it on a Windows computer, use the Fiery User Software Installer.

Note: Do not attempt to uninstall user software from the Windows Control Panel.

For information, see [Modify user software from media](#) on page 8.

Installing user software on a Mac OS computer

Installation of user software on a Mac OS computer is done separately for each application.

Note the following:

- When you initiate installation of an application, any previous version installed on the client computer is automatically removed.
- All applications must be from the same package of software. When you initiate installation of one application from a package, all applications on the client computer from a different package are removed. You are prompted to re-install the applications from the new package. If necessary, you can manually uninstall the user software using the Fiery Software Uninstaller.

Adobe Acrobat and Enfocus PitStop, for use with Fiery Impose/JobMaster/Compose are supplied with your Fiery Impose/JobMaster/Compose kit and are installed in a separate operation. For more information, see [Fiery make-ready applications](#) on page 20.

Note: Fiery JobFlow is not supported on Mac OS computers.

Installing and uninstalling user software on a Mac OS computer can be done from the User Software DVD, or over the Internet or your company intranet. Ask your network administrator for the IP address of the Fiery ES.

Use your Internet browser to access WebTools on the Internet. For complete information about browser and system requirements, see *Configuration and Setup*.

For information about installing printer drivers, see *Printing*.

Install user software on Mac OS from media

- 1 Insert the Fiery ES User Software DVD into the DVD drive of your computer.
- 2 In the User Software window, open the Mac_User_SW folder.
- 3 Double-click the Fiery Applications.dmg icon.
- 4 Double-click the icon for the application that you want to install.
- 5 Follow the on-screen instructions.

Install user software on Mac OS from WebTools

- 1 Start your Internet browser.
- 2 Type the IP address or DNS name of the Fiery ES.
If the home page for the printer appears instead of the WebTools page, click the WebTools link.
- 3 Click SOFTWARE DOWNLOADS.
- 4 Click the link for the software that you want to install.
- 5 Double-click Fiery Applications.dmg.
- 6 Double-click the icon for the application that you want to install.
- 7 Follow the on-screen instructions.

Uninstall user software on Mac OS

- 1 Insert the User Software DVD into the DVD drive of your computer.
- 2 Double-click the icon for the Fiery Software Uninstaller.
- 3 Drag the Fiery Software Uninstaller icon to your Applications folder.
- 4 Choose Go > Applications > Fiery Software Uninstaller.
- 5 Select the software that you want to uninstall and follow the on-screen instructions.

Using Fiery Software Manager

Fiery Software Manager is installed automatically by the Fiery User Software Installer and manages any available updates of the Fiery User Software.

After installation, the Fiery Software Manager icon is displayed by default on:

- Windows: In the computer system tray and also in Start > All Programs > Fiery.
- Mac OS: In the menu bar and also in Applications.

Fiery Software Manager displays the versions of the Fiery workflow applications that are installed and a list of available user software that can be downloaded.

You can Check for updates of the user software and specify a number of preferences for managing updates.

To specify preferences:

- 1 Right-click the Fiery Software Manager icon from the computer system tray (Windows) or the Menu bar (Mac OS) and select Open Fiery Software Manager.
- 2 Click the Preferences icon at the bottom left of the Fiery Software Manager window.

3 Select one of the following:

- **Launch at Login (default setting):** Fiery Software Manager automatically checks for updates and notifies you if any are available.
- **Show additional features:**
 - Install server updates for Fiery JDF (service technicians only).
 - Download server language packages for additional language support.
 - To install the Fiery API, download the Fiery Integration Package.
- **Help EFI improve its software:** Allows EFI to collect anonymous usage data from Fiery applications.

Command WorkStation

Command WorkStation is a cross-platform application that gives operators the tools to manage jobs on the Fiery ES, and administrators the tools to configure the Fiery ES for printing.

On the main Command WorkStation window, you can access:

- **Home:** A high-level status overview of your connected Fiery servers and a snapshot of print production statistics.
- **Job Center:** Displays the Servers list showing every Fiery ES that you are connected to. You can switch between servers, and add or remove them from the list. Information is available about consumables on the printer and the media loaded in each tray. Errors and alerts are also displayed.

You can view the status of jobs, preview processed jobs, and use tools for managing jobs in the print queues. You can also search for jobs and access features from the customizable toolbar.

To access Job Center, either click the Job Center icon on the Command WorkStation sidebar or click Job Center on the Command WorkStation View menu.

Note: When Command WorkStation is launched, Job Center is the default view.

- **Apps and Resources:** displays the list of installed Fiery applications, applications available for download, and resources for the Fiery server.

Command WorkStation also includes:

- **Device Center:** Access all the resources of the Fiery ES. From Device Center, you can access Server Configuration, perform Color Setup, manage VDP Resources, access presets, and view Fonts installed on the Fiery ES.

To access Device Center, either right-click the Fiery ES in the Servers list and select Device Center or click Device Center on the Command WorkStation Server menu.

- **Fiery make-ready applications:** license-protected features of Command WorkStation that include Fiery Impose, Fiery Compose, and Fiery JobMaster.

For more information about the Command WorkStation workspace and features, see *Fiery Command WorkStation Help*.

Installing Command WorkStation

Install Command WorkStation on a Windows or Mac OS computer with a network connection to the Fiery ES.

For a complete list of system requirements, see *Configuration and Setup*.

The Installer is provided on the User Software DVD as part of the Fiery User Software Installer (Windows computers) or as a separate application (Mac OS X). To install Command WorkStation, see [Installing user software](#) on page 7.

Connecting Command WorkStation

To use Command WorkStation, you must configure the connection to the Fiery ES.

The first time you start Command WorkStation, you are prompted to configure the connection to the Fiery ES. You can also edit the configuration whenever a change to your Fiery ES or network occurs, such as a changed server name or IP address. If you change Fiery ES Setup information, do so before you reconfigure the connection.

Note: You can connect up to as many as ten different Fiery ES servers in Command WorkStation. If you try to connect to more than ten, Command WorkStation may stop responding.

The Fiery ES Configuration page contains information you need when configuring the connection, such as the IP address of the Fiery ES. For TCP/IP installations, you can use the DNS name instead of the IP address. Make sure that the Fiery ES is registered in a Domain Name Server (DNS) on your network. For more information, contact your network administrator.

Configure the connection to the Fiery ES

Configure the connection from Command WorkStation to the Fiery ES.

Before configuring the connection, you must obtain the IP address or DNS name of the Fiery ES. Ask your network administrator for this information.

1 Start Command WorkStation:

- Windows: Click the Windows icon or Start and choose All Programs > Fiery > Fiery Command WorkStation.
- Mac OS: Choose Go > Applications > Fiery > Command WorkStation > Command WorkStation.

2 Type the DNS name or IP address and click Add to add the server.

3 Choose the username from the User menu and type the appropriate password, if required.

Ask your administrator for the password for the Fiery ES that you want to connect to.

You have the option to save your password by selecting Save password. The next time you log on as that user, the password is automatically entered. Command WorkStation saves one password per Fiery ES at any one time.

For information about setting passwords and the default Administrator password for the Fiery ES, see *Configuration and Setup*.

Note: In addition to the two default user names of administrator and operator, users can login with their own user names if the network administrator has set them as a member of one of the groups in Configure > User Accounts.

4 Click Login.

Command WorkStation is now connected to the Fiery ES. You can begin using Command WorkStation to monitor and manage jobs on the Fiery ES.

For information about managing and connecting another Fiery ES, see *Fiery Command WorkStation Help*.

Using Command WorkStation

For instructions on using Command WorkStation features, see the Online help.

The Help menu offers access to the following resources:

- Help provides detailed procedural information.
- How To accesses the EFI web page, which provides demo scripts and sample files.
- Start Tour provides a quick demo of the enhanced features of Command WorkStation.
- Check for updates determines whether you are running the latest versions of Command WorkStation and associated applications.
- Online Resources includes product downloads, training, support, and additional resources such as newsletters, case studies, and white papers.

Mixed Media

The Mixed Media feature allows you to define the chapter divisions of a job, print ranges of pages on varying types of media, and insert blank media between pages.

If tab printing is supported, you can insert tab media containing text labels.

The following guidelines and restrictions apply to Mixed Media settings:

- The Mixed Media dialog box restricts you from specifying settings that conflict with any media, page size, or finishing settings that have been specified for the job in the Job Properties dialog box or printer driver.
- When two or more Mixed Media settings are in conflict with each other, the Mixed Media dialog box highlights the setting names in red, signaling you to resolve the conflict.
- When you specify print options (in the Job Properties dialog box or printer driver) after specifying Mixed Media settings, certain print options may conflict with the page-specific Mixed Media settings. You must resolve the conflict by choosing different print options or removing certain Mixed Media specifications.
- Mixed Media settings can affect the use of output color profiles in some cases. For more information, see *Color Printing*.

Define media for selected pages

You can define different media for selected pages, or a range of pages.

1 Select a job in the Held list in Job Center. Do one of the following:

- Click Properties in the Actions menu.
- Right-click and select Properties.
- Click the Properties icon in the Job Center tool bar.
- Double-click the job.

- 2 Click the Media icon in Job Properties and scroll down to Mixed Media.
- 3 In the Mixed Media dialog box, click New Page Range.
- 4 In the Page/Page Range Media dialog box, type pages and page ranges as comma-separated values (for example: 3,9–14,18) in the Define Media for Page(s) field.
- 5 Specify media or output paper size as required. To specify a custom output paper size, click the Custom button and specify a custom paper size in the Custom Paper Size dialog box.
- 6 Choose other settings, as required.
If you assign new settings to the back side of a duplexed sheet, a blank page is inserted to force the assigned page content to the front side of the next sheet.
- 7 Click Add Definition after each media setting that you define.
- 8 Click Close to return to the Mixed Media dialog box.

Insert blank pages

You can insert blank pages in your job and assign different media for them.

- 1 Select a job in the Held list in Job Center. Do one of the following:
 - Click Properties in the Actions menu.
 - Right-click and select Properties.
 - Click the Properties icon in the Job Center tool bar.
 - Double-click the job.
- 2 Click the Media icon in Job Properties and scroll down to Mixed Media.
- 3 Click New Insert in the Mixed Media dialog box.
- 4 Indicate whether to insert the blank before or after the target page. Define the target page as the first or last page in the document, or as a specific numbered page.
- 5 Specify media or output paper size as required. To specify a custom output paper size, click the Custom button and specify a custom paper size in the Custom Paper Size dialog box.
- 6 Choose other settings, as required.
- 7 Click Insert after each blank page that you define.
- 8 Click Close to return to the Mixed Media dialog box.

Insert tabs

The Insert Tab feature allows you to automatically insert tab pages throughout a job.

The Insert Tab feature accommodates various sizes and types of tab media stock. You can insert the tab text and override text attributes on a per-job basis.

Note: When you configure counters for the printer, printed tab pages count as black-and-white pages, provided the tab text color is set to the default (Black). Expelled tabs are not counted as printed pages.

- 1 Select a job in the Held list in Job Center. Do one of the following:
 - Click Properties in the Actions menu.
 - Right-click and select Properties.
 - Click the Properties icon in the Job Center tool bar.
 - Double-click the job.
- 2 Click the Media icon in Job Properties and scroll down to Mixed Media.
- 3 Click New Tab in the Mixed Media dialog box.
- 4 In the Insert Tab dialog, type the number of tab positions included in a complete tab set in the Number of tabs in a set field.

This specification ensures that tab text is printed in the correct tab positions. For example, tab positions in a set consisting of ten tabs are distinct from tab positions in a set consisting of five tabs.
- 5 Specify other settings as required for the tab stock.

Paper size values refer to the dimensions of the stock, including the tabbed portion.
- 6 To specify attributes for the tab text, type the number of tabs in the Number of tabs to insert field, and then click Insert.

Specify tab text

You can specify what text you want on inserted tabs, and also specify styles.

- 1 If you want all the tabs to use the same text attributes, select the Apply the same text attributes for all tabs option in the Tabs Text area of the Insert Tab dialog box.
- 2 Click Insert.
- 3 In the Text Attributes column, click the arrows to display the menus for font, size, color, text rotation, and text alignment, and choose the attributes that you want from each menu.
- 4 Indicate where you want each tab inserted in the document.
 - a) In the Page field, type the page number where you want the tab inserted.
 - b) Select Before to insert the tab before the page number, or clear this check box.

Note: If you define a tab to be inserted between an odd-numbered page and an even-numbered page in a duplex job, the tab is inserted after the odd-numbered page on the first sheet, and the even-numbered page is printed on the next sheet.

- 5 Type the desired tab text for each tab in the Tab Text field.

To define text attributes for each tab individually, click Text Attributes for that tab.
- 6 After you type the tab text, click OK to close the Insert Tab dialog box.

- 7 To modify media settings for the tabs, select the tab description in the Mixed Media Definition list, and then click Edit.
- 8 To apply your Insert Tab settings to the document, click OK to close the Mixed Media dialog box and Job Properties.

Soft proofing

The Soft Proof feature allows you to preview general color accuracy of print jobs on a monitor.

Use soft proofs to adjust colors in a processed job before it is printed. You can also use the preview to verify job placement, orientation, and content. Soft Proof is available through Fiery ImageViewer in Command WorkStation. Fiery ImageViewer displays the job with the actual CMYK values that are sent to the printer and therefore provides an accurate soft proof of color and grayscale values.

To access soft proofing, select a processed, held job in Command WorkStation and do one of the following:

- Right-click the job and select ImageViewer.
- Click ImageViewer in the Actions menu.
- Click the Preview icon on the toolbar. In the Preview window that appears, choose File > Launch ImageViewer.

Image Enhance

Use the Image Enhance print option to apply photo enhancement to photographic color images on specified pages or sheets of a job.

 **Important:** This feature is not used on graphics such as logos or charts.

This option is located in the Image tab of the printer driver and Job Properties.

To turn on this feature, select the Apply Image Enhancement option for a job and specify the pages or sheets to be affected. You can customize Image Enhance settings from Command WorkStation.

For more information about the Image Enhance print option and how to configure it, see *Fiery Command WorkStation Help*.

Image Enhance Visual Editor

Image Enhance Visual Editor (IEVE) is an image editing application that provides users with a visual workspace to adjust individual images in a job.

IEVE is available with Fiery Productivity Package.

You can adjust tone, color, and sharpness, and perform red-eye correction. You can apply the same adjustments to all images on a page or a range of pages. You can see the effects of your adjustments and fine-tune the appearance of an image. When you save a set of adjustments as a preset, you can easily apply the same adjustments in the future.

 **Important:** Adjustments made in IEVE affect the job on the Fiery ES and cannot be applied to the original source document.

For information about using IEVE, see *Fiery Productivity Package*.

ImageViewer

ImageViewer allows you to soft proof and adjust colors in a job before it is printed.

Use the preview in ImageViewer on a job to verify job placement, orientation, and content, as well as color accuracy. If the job contains halftone screened settings, the preview shows a composite view of all separations at the dot level. You can select to display the plate data for each process color independently or in combination with the other colors, allowing inspection of individual plate data or a combination of any range of plates. The job must be processed and held.

ImageViewer is available with Fiery Productivity Package. For information about using ImageViewer, see *Fiery Productivity Package* and *Fiery Command WorkStation Help*.

Troubleshooting connections

If you cannot connect to the Fiery ES or locate the Fiery ES from your computer, contact the network administrator.

The administrator may need to troubleshoot your network connections and check settings on the servers that you print to. If settings have changed, it may be necessary to reconfigure the Fiery ES (see *Configuration and Setup*).

If you can connect to the Fiery ES with another utility, you may need to reconfigure the Command WorkStation connection to the Fiery ES.

If you configured the Fiery ES and set up client computers and network servers according to the instructions in *Configuration and Setup*, print a Test Page. If you can print the Test Page but still cannot print a document from a remote computer, contact your network administrator to troubleshoot the network connection.

If you cannot connect and cannot print a Test Page, check the printer control panel for error messages.

Command WorkStation does not respond

You can try different actions when Command WorkStation does not respond.

If the Command WorkStation windows do not update:

- Log off and then quit Command WorkStation.
- Restart Command WorkStation or restart the computer.

If the Command WorkStation windows do not update or no jobs are displayed, and the mouse has no effect (you cannot select a job or a window, use a right mouse command, or select a menu item), the Fiery ES is offline or network communication has failed.

To force an exit from Command WorkStation:

- Windows: Press Ctrl-Alt-Delete and use the Task Manager to close Command WorkStation.
- Mac OS X: Choose Apple menu > Force Quit, select Command WorkStation, and then click Force Quit. Or, press Command+Option+Esc, select Command WorkStation, and then click Force Quit.

- At the Fiery ES, disconnect and reconnect the network cable, and then try printing a Test Page or Configuration page.
- If printing fails, restart the Fiery ES.

Create a job error report

If you encounter any errors while processing or printing a job, you can create a job error report in Command WorkStation for troubleshooting purposes.

The job error report can be sent to technical support.

- 1** Select a job in the Printed or Held list in Command WorkStation.
Only one job error report can be created at a time. If multiple jobs are selected in Job Center, the Create Error Report button is not available.
- 2** On a Windows computer, press Ctrl and right-click the job. On a Mac OS computer, press Command (Mac OS) and right-click the job.
- 3** Click Create Error Report.
- 4** Enter the information in the Create Error Report dialog.

Note: See the "Troubleshooting" chapter in *Configuration and Setup* for information that we recommend you provide.

Fiery make-ready applications

Fiery make-ready applications integrate labor-intensive document preparation activities at both the sheet level and page level in one visual interface.

These integrated job preparation tools offer the following modes, depending on what client license is available:

- Preview provides a preview of a job before it is processed and is a standard feature of Command WorkStation. Users can do a soft proof of each sheet surface of a job before it is processed. The visual interface changes dynamically to display any changes made in preparing documents for printing.
- Fiery JobMaster provides advanced PDF-based job preparation tools for scanning, tab creation and insertion, page numbering, chapter creation, and late stage editing. It includes all functions of Fiery Compose.
- Fiery Compose allows you to define the chapter divisions of a job, print ranges of pages on varying types of media, insert blank media between pages, and insert tab media containing text labels (if the printer supports tab printing).
- Fiery Impose applies imposition layouts to jobs for custom printing, binding, and trimming. Fiery Impose also applies impositions to variable data jobs and saves imposed jobs as PDF files.

The Fiery make-ready applications are supported on both Windows and Mac OS computers. For information about system requirements, see *Configuration and Setup*.

Fiery make-ready software kits

The Fiery make-ready applications are available in several different kit configurations.

You must have the software kit-specific licenses installed on your computer to use the full functionality of the software. If you choose not to activate the license for any of the components, Fiery Impose runs in Demo mode, and Fiery JobMaster and Fiery Compose settings are not displayed. In Impose Demo mode, imposed jobs print with a watermark, and you can save imposed jobs in .dbp format to the Fiery ES. You can save imposed jobs in Adobe PDF format to a hard drive and the Fiery ES when you are in Demo mode, but they are saved with a watermark.

The available kits are:

- Fiery JobMaster kit (includes the Adobe Acrobat/Enfocus PitStop DVD and a License Activation Code)
- Fiery Impose kit (includes the Adobe Acrobat/Enfocus PitStop DVD and a License Activation Code)
- Fiery Compose kit (includes the Adobe Acrobat/Enfocus PitStop DVD and a License Activation Code)
- Fiery Impose-JobMaster kit, which includes both Fiery Impose and Fiery JobMaster (includes the Adobe Acrobat/Enfocus PitStop DVD and a License Activation Code)
- Fiery Impose-Compose kit, which includes both Fiery Impose and Fiery Compose (includes the Adobe Acrobat/Enfocus PitStop DVD and a License Activation Code)

Enabling Fiery make-ready applications

Fiery make-ready applications are license-protected features of Command WorkStation that work in conjunction with Adobe Acrobat and the Enfocus PitStop plug-in.

Fiery make-ready applications include Fiery Impose, Fiery Compose, and Fiery JobMaster.

You must install a special license on each computer that runs the software. This section explains how to install the license and the required software. Note the following:

- The License Activation Code is provided on a card in your kit.
- Adobe Acrobat must be installed on the same computer as the Fiery make-ready application to preview .ps files. You do not need Adobe Acrobat or Enfocus PitStop to preview .pdf files.

Note: If you are enabling Fiery make-ready software on the Fiery ES, you must log on to the Fiery ES with administrator privileges and type the appropriate password. To ensure network security, the system administrator may change this password frequently. Consult your administrator to obtain the password.

Install a license for your software option

A special license is required to use your software option.

You can install a license in the following ways:

- Automatically, if you are connected to the internet, as described below.
- Manually, if you are not connected to the internet. See [Activate a Fiery option manually](#) on page 22.

You can de-activate the license and re-activate it on a different computer. See *Fiery Options Help*, accessed from the License Activation window.

- 1 In Command WorkStation, right-click a spooled job and choose JobMaster, Impose, or Compose.
- 2 If you are asked whether to activate the option, click Yes.
If you selected Impose, you can select Use Demo or Yes.
To open the License Activation window, you can also select Preview in step 1, and choose Help > Manage License.
- 3 In the License Activation window, click Activate.
- 4 To agree to the terms and conditions of the license agreement, click Continue.
- 5 For License Activation Code, type the LAC you received in your kit, and click Continue.
- 6 If the Fiery option name is correct, click Activate.
- 7 Click Finish.
For more information about the activation process, click the Help icon in the License Activation window.

Activate a Fiery option manually

If the computer is not connected to the Internet, you must manually transfer data between the computer and the EFI licensing website. You will generate a request file, submit it to the EFI licensing website to obtain a license file, and then use the license file to activate the option.

- 1 In the License Activation window, click **Activate**.
- 2 Click **Continue** to agree to the terms and conditions of the license agreement.
- 3 Type the LAC in the License Activation Code field, and then click **Continue**.
- 4 Click **Continue** to proceed with the manual process.
- 5 Click **Create Request File** and save the file.
- 6 Copy the request file to a computer that is connected to the Internet.
- 7 Open a browser and go to licensing.efi.com.
- 8 Click **Browse**, select the request file, and then click **Upload**.
- 9 Click **Continue**.
- 10 Click **Download License File** and save the file.
- 11 Copy the license file to the computer where you first entered the License Activation Code.
- 12 Return to the Generate License window and click **Yes**.
- 13 Click **Browse**, select and open the license file, and then click **Activate**.
- 14 If the activation requires a restart, you can either click **Restart** to restart now or click **Finish** if you want to activate additional options before restarting. If the activation does not require a restart, just click **Finish**.

Install Adobe Acrobat and Enfocus PitStop Edit

Install Adobe Acrobat and Enfocus PitStop Edit from your software option kit.

To complete installation and activation of Adobe Acrobat and Enfocus PitStop Edit on your client computer, make sure the computer is connected to the Internet.

- 1 If the most recent versions of Adobe Acrobat and Enfocus PitStop Edit are not installed, uninstall the versions that are currently resident on the computer.
 - a) Close all open applications.
 - b) Follow the instructions for your computer for removing programs.
 - c) After you finish uninstalling earlier versions of Adobe Acrobat and Enfocus PitStop, restart the computer.
- 2 Close all software applications that are currently running on the computer.
- 3 Insert the Adobe Acrobat/Enfocus PitStop DVD (Windows or Mac OS) into the DVD drive of your computer.

- 4 If the installer does not start automatically, navigate to the root level of the DVD and double-click Setup.exe (Windows) or Setup.app (Mac OS).
 - Windows: Select the language and click Next.
 - Mac OS X: Click Install and follow the on-screen instructions.

The software option that you purchased is now fully enabled.

Fiery make-ready applications help

Fiery make-ready applications help is accessed from the application window.

Fiery make-ready applications include Fiery Impose, Fiery Compose, and Fiery JobMaster.

The Help menu provides procedural information.

Scan

Scan is a collection of software components that allow you to scan documents from the printer glass (platen) or through the automatic document feeder (ADF) on the printer and send the scanned images to specific destinations.

Scan consists of the following:

- Fiery Remote Scan includes the TWAIN plug-in module. Fiery Remote Scan allows you to retrieve a scan from a printer.
- Scan to Mailbox allows you to send the scan to a mailbox on the Fiery ES, from where it can be retrieved. You can also save the scan to any folder on the network or on the client computer.
- WebTools Docs allows you to retrieve scanned jobs from mailboxes on the Fiery ES.

User Box feature on the printer

The User Box feature on the printer allows you to scan documents from the printer glass or through the printer's automatic document feeder (ADF) and save the scanned images to mailboxes on the printer hard disk.

After scanning a document to a User Box on the printer, you can send the scans to specific destinations, such as a local drive, and also retrieve them using WebTools Mailbox and Fiery Remote Scan. To save data to a User Box, create the box, and then scan the data to the specified box. Each user can have access to multiple boxes: Public, Personal, and Group boxes.

Public User Boxes are accessible to everyone, Personal User Boxes are assigned to a single user, and Group User Boxes can be used by the users who are logged in as members of that User Box group account.

Different levels of authentication are supported on the printer. User authentication may be enabled to access the printer, as well as mailboxes, depending on the type of mailbox and the environment. Public boxes are accessible in any scenario, with user authentication turned on or off. For Personal boxes, user authentication is turned on, and then users create their own personal boxes by entering a box/name and an optional password. For Group boxes, the account track feature must be enabled on the printer, and a password and user name are required to access each box.

To find out what levels of user authentication have been set on the printer, ask your system administrator.

The printer supports the following file formats: PDF, Compact PDF, TIFF, JPEG, XPS, and Compact XPS. The default file type for scanning is PDF, which is supported in Command WorkStation. If a job is scanned in a format that is not supported in Command WorkStation, it is still possible to print the file using the Fiery ES printer driver or third party application printer driver.

The printer also supports producing multiple page files or single page files for all file formats supported, except for JPEG, which supports only single page files. To scan a multiple-page job in JPEG format, you must scan each page separately.

See [Scan to a User Box](#) on page 25 for an overview of scanning to a User Box. More information about setting up User Boxes on the printer is provided in the manual that accompanies your printer.

Scan to a User Box

This procedure provides an overview of scanning to a User Box from the printer control panel.

- 1 If user authentication is enabled, enter the user name and password.
Ask your system administrator for the log in information.
- 2 Press Fax/Scan on the printer control panel.
- 3 Press Direct Input.
- 4 Press User Box.
- 5 Select a User Box.
You can also create a User Box by entering a User Box number.
- 6 Enter the document name.
- 7 Specify scan settings.
- 8 Press Start.

For more information, see the guide that comes with your printer.

Installing Fiery Remote Scan

To install and use Fiery Remote Scan, either as a separate application or as a plug-in module, you must have a Windows or Mac OS computer with a network connection.

For detailed system requirements, see *Configuration and Setup*. The installer for Fiery Remote Scan is located on the User Software DVD. To install Fiery Remote Scan, see [Installing user software](#) on page 7.

- Access Fiery Remote Scan in the following ways:
 - The Remote Scan application is a separate application started from your desktop. The Remote Scan application allows you to retrieve scan files from a mailbox.
 - The Remote Scan TWAIN plug-in module is used with compatible TWAIN compliant applications, such as Adobe Photoshop or Adobe Acrobat. You can directly acquire the scan into the application.

Multiple Fiery Remote Scan TWAIN users can simultaneously access the same Fiery ES.

Configuring Fiery Remote Scan

When you open Fiery Remote Scan for the first time, you must configure the connection to the Fiery ES. You can add more than one Fiery ES to the Fiery Server list in Fiery Remote Scan and select the required one from the list.

To configure the connection, you need the name or IP address of the Fiery ES. If you do not have the name or IP address, use the Search function to find the Fiery ES on your network.

After first use, Fiery Remote Scan automatically attempts to connect to the last Fiery ES used in the previous session. You can immediately start to retrieve any scans initiated at the printer control panel, and use *Fiery Remote Scan Help*.

Instructions for configuring and modifying the connection to the Fiery ES are also provided in *Fiery Remote Scan Help*.

- 1 Open Fiery Remote Scan.
- 2 Click the Choose a Fiery icon (magnifying glass) to open the Connect to Server dialog box.
- 3 Type the name or IP address in the Connect to a server field.

If you do not have the name or IP address, see [To perform an advanced search](#) on page 26.

- 4 Click the plus sign icon to add it to the server list.

When you click the plus sign, you add the Fiery ES to the list, but do not connect to it. This operation is useful when you want to add more than one Fiery ES in a session. You can then switch between any Fiery ES in the Fiery Remote Scan window without opening the Connect to Server dialog box.

- 5 Click Connect or Cancel.

Clicking Connect adds the Fiery ES to the list at the same time as connecting to it. If the connection was successful, the Fiery Remote Scan window opens.

If you clicked Cancel, all operations that you did to add or remove the Fiery ES are cancelled. Any server list changes are discarded.

If you do not have the specific name or IP address of the Fiery ES, you can search by IP ranges or by subnet.

To perform an advanced search

You can search for a Fiery ES in different ways.

- 1 In the Connect to Server dialog box, click the Choose a Fiery icon (magnifying glass) to open the Search dialog box.
- 2 Select Auto Search or select IP Range or Subnet to specify the range to search, and then click Go.
Any available Fiery ES that matches the search criteria is shown. You can filter the search result list by typing a keyword in the Filter by keyword field.
- 3 Select the Fiery ES from the results list and click Add.
- 4 To add another Fiery ES to the list for later use, click the plus sign in the Connect to Server dialog box.
- 5 In the Connect to Server dialog box, click Connect to add the Fiery ES to My Fiery List and connect to it.

If you clicked Connect and the connection was successful, the Fiery Remote Scan window opens.

If you clicked Cancel, all operations that you did to add or remove any Fiery ES are canceled. Any server list changes are discarded.

Using Fiery Remote Scan

The Fiery Remote Scan standalone application and the Fiery Remote Scan TWAIN plug-in module manage scanning on the printer from the Fiery ES.

With Fiery Remote Scan or the TWAIN plug-in module, you can retrieve files from the mailbox. If you are using Fiery Remote Scan, you can choose where to save the scanned file on the computer. If you are using the TWAIN plug-in module, you can open the scan file in a host application for editing purposes.

Instructions for using the Fiery Remote Scan application and plug-in module are provided in *Fiery Remote Scan Help*, accessed by clicking the Help icon in the Fiery Remote Scan window.

Retrieving scans using Docs

You can retrieve scan jobs in the Fiery ES mailboxes to your remote workstation using WebTools Docs.

Before sending a scan to a mailbox, you must first set up the mailbox in the User Accounts area of the Configure application, available from WebTools > Configure or from Command WorkStation. If desired, set a predefined user name and password for the mailbox.

For instructions on using WebTools, see [Using WebTools](#) on page 30.

Fiery Hot Folders

Fiery Hot Folders provides a simple and automated method of sending print jobs to the Fiery ES across the network. You drag documents to a folder that stores and reuses preset print options for printing PostScript and PDF files on the Fiery ES.

With Hot Folders, you can do the following:

- Create special folders (hot folders) that assign specific print settings and print queues to jobs.
- Print jobs to the Fiery ES by dragging and dropping them onto hot folders on your computer's desktop.
- Monitor the status of jobs sent to hot folders.

Note: Hot Folders is installed by default with Command WorkStation. For information about installing Command WorkStation, see [Installing Command WorkStation](#) on page 12.

Using Hot Folders

For instructions on how to use Hot Folders features, see the Help provided with the software.

After Hot Folders is installed, a Hot Folders icon appears on the desktop of the client computer.

You can use file format filters with Hot Folders. For information, see *Hot Folders Help*.

If the Fiery Productivity Package is installed and enabled on the Fiery ES, you can use additional file format filters with Hot Folders. For information about using these file format filters, see *Fiery Productivity Package*.

WebTools

WebTools consists of several utilities that allow you to manage your Fiery ES from the Internet or your company intranet.

From WebTools, you can access:

- Home provides current information about the jobs processing and printing on the Fiery ES. Home also allows you to download software updates, manage installed Fiery options, and check for product updates.
- Docs allows remote users to access jobs on the Fiery ES over the Internet or intranet.
- Mailbox allows remote users to access jobs on the printer over the Internet or intranet. You can also create, edit, and delete User Boxes on the printer.
- Configure allows the Fiery ES administrator to view and modify Setup options remotely from a Windows or Mac OS computer.
- Fiery System Restore allows you to back up the Fiery ES manually, schedule automatic backups, and restore the Fiery ES from a backup file.

Pop-up Blocker with WebTools

Pop-up Blocker is turned on by default in some versions of Internet Explorer on Windows computers. With this function turned on, a warning message appears when you attempt to access WebTools, and access to WebTools is denied.

To gain access to WebTools, do one of the following:

- Change the Pop-up Blocker setting by clicking the warning message and choosing one of the selections that appears.
- Turn off Pop-up Blocker in the Internet Explorer Tools menu.

If your browser has the advanced Internet option enabled to display notifications about script errors, it might display a warning window before displaying a Help file. To avoid the warning window, clear the “Display a notification about every script error” option on the Advanced tab in the Internet Options dialog box. A warning message might also appear in the Status bar, but the content of the Help file is not affected by this error.

For more information, see Internet Explorer Help, or the documentation that accompanies the Windows operating system.

Accessing the WebTools home page

Use your Internet browser to access WebTools.

For complete information about browser and system requirements, see *Configuration and Setup*.

- 1 Start your Internet browser.
- 2 Type the IP address or DNS name of the Fiery ES.
- 3 Click the WebTools tab that you want to use.

Using WebTools

The following sections describe how to use the WebTools.

Home

Home lets you:

- View processing and printing status on the Fiery ES.
- Manage Fiery options.
- Check for Product Updates for the Fiery ES.
- Access Software Downloads that allow you to download installers for user software directly from the Fiery ES.

Docs

Docs allows you to access jobs on the Fiery ES over the Internet or intranet.

You can:

- Manage and distribute jobs in your mailbox, if scanning to mailboxes is supported on your printer.
Mailboxes are set up with the Configure application (accessible from WebTools or Command WorkStation).
- Import and print jobs to the Fiery ES depending on access privileges defined by the administrator.

Configure

Configure allows the Fiery ES administrator to view and modify Setup options remotely.

The Configure application is available from WebTools > Configure and from within Command WorkStation.

For instructions on how to use Configure, see *Configuration and Setup*.

Fiery System Restore

Fiery System Restore allows the administrator to back up the Fiery ES manually, schedule automatic backups, and restore the Fiery ES from a backup file.

Use Mailbox to retrieve scans

When you have scanned a job to the User Box on the printer, you can access it from WebTools.

- 1 Start your Internet browser.
- 2 Type the IP address or DNS name of the printer.
- 3 Click the Mailbox tab.
- 4 Choose whether to log in to the Public boxes or as Administrator.
If LDAP has been enabled on the printer, your user name would consist of “domain name\user name”. When you have logged in, you can choose to edit and delete existing mailboxes and also create new mailboxes.
- 5 Click the mailbox Number-Name link to open it.
- 6 Click Download if you wish to download the file to your computer.
You can choose the file format for downloading the file.



Customer Release Notes

Fiery® ES IC-418 version 1.0

This Customer Release Notes document provides information about the Fiery® ES IC-418 version 1.0 software. Before using the Fiery ES, make copies of the Customer Release Notes and distribute to all users.

This document uses the following terms:

Term	Description
Fiery ES	Fiery® ES IC-418
printer	MFP

Installation

Fiery icon on printer control panel

The first time the Fiery ES is powered on after it is installed, it may take a few minutes for the Fiery icon to show on the printer control panel.

Fiery menu

In order to display the Fiery menu on the printer panel, connect the LAN cable to a working hub. Also, the Fiery menu on the printer panel does not function if SSLv3 or TLSv1.0 is enabled in the SSL/TLS settings on the printer. In that case, enable TLSv1.1 and TLSv1.2.

Color Printing

Substitute Colors

For some documents, the Substitute Colors option does not work properly if there are objects that include a transparency background.



Fiery Command WorkStation

A4 tab paper on Bypass tray

In Tray Alignment, if you choose A4 paper on the Bypass tray, it is displayed as simply A4.

Printing

Displaying very long document names

Very long document names are not displayed completely on the printer panel.

5.5x8.5 job not stapled

If you send a 5.5x8.5 SEF job to be stapled, an error message states that it is not possible. You can send the job as LEF instead, and it will be stapled.

Printing preference window

For the Fiery Driver for Mac OS, if the Printing Preference window is opened for a Microsoft Office document and then another application is opened and minimized, the Printing Preference window becomes hidden behind the Print window. This occurs only for the combination of 64-bit Mac OS and 32-bit Microsoft Office.

As a workaround, click Cancel on the Print window then reopen the Printing Preference window.

Grayscale and Black Printing

Mottling may be seen on printed output when you print a job with Grayscale and Pure Black.

Other applications

Printing JDF files

When you print a JDF job from an application, such as Adobe Acrobat, to the Fiery ES with Command WorkStation, you may encounter a JDF ticket error. As a workaround, right-click the job in the Command WorkStation Held list, select Ignore JDF ticket conflicts, and then print it. Resolve any runlist errors. All other print settings are preserved.

Legal Notices

This product documentation is protected by copyright, and all rights are reserved. No part of it may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means for any purpose without express prior written consent from Electronics For Imaging, Inc. (“EFI”), except as expressly permitted herein. Information in this document is subject to change without notice and does not represent a commitment on the part of EFI.

This product documentation is provided in conjunction with the EFI software (“Software”) and any other EFI product described in this documentation. The Software is furnished under license and may only be used or copied in accordance with the terms of the EFI Software End User License Agreement set forth below.

Patents

This product may be covered by one or more of the following U.S. Patents:

5,970,174, 6,025,922, 6,041,200, 6,065,041, 6,112,665, 6,116,707, 6,122,407, 6,134,018, 6,166,821, 6,173,286, 6,185,335, 6,201,614, 6,215,562, 6,219,155, 6,219,659, 6,222,641, 6,224,048, 6,225,974, 6,226,419, 6,239,895, 6,256,108, 6,271,937, 6,278,901, 6,279,009, 6,289,122, 6,292,270, 6,327,047, 6,327,050, 6,327,052, 6,331,899, 6,340,975, 6,341,018, 6,341,307, 6,347,256, 6,348,978, 6,366,918, 6,369,895, 6,381,036, 6,429,949, 6,449,393, 6,457,823, 6,476,927, 6,490,696, 6,501,565, 6,519,053, 6,539,323, 6,543,871, 6,546,364, 6,549,294, 6,549,300, 6,550,991, 6,552,815, 6,559,958, 6,572,293, 6,590,676, 6,616,355, 6,633,396, 6,636,326, 6,637,958, 6,643,317, 6,647,149, 6,660,103, 6,662,199, 6,678,068, 6,679,640, 6,707,563, 6,741,262, 6,748,471, 6,753,845, 6,757,436, 6,757,440, 6,778,700, 6,781,596, 6,786,578, 6,816,276, 6,825,943, 6,832,865, 6,836,342, 6,850,335, 6,856,428, 6,857,803, 6,859,832, 6,866,434, 6,874,860, 6,879,409, 6,885,477, 6,888,644, 6,905,189, 6,930,795, 6,950,110, 6,962,449, 6,967,728, 6,974,269, 6,978,299, 6,992,792, 7,002,700, 7,023,570, 7,031,015, 7,058,231, 7,064,153, 7,073,901, 7,081,969, 7,090,327, 7,093,046, 7,095,518, 7,097,369, 7,099,027, 7,105,585, 7,116,444, 7,177,045, 7,177,049, 7,204,484, 7,206,082, 7,212,312, 7,229,225, 7,233,397, 7,233,409, 7,239,403, 7,245,400, 7,248,752, 7,259,768, 7,259,893, 7,280,090, 7,296,157, 7,301,665, 7,301,667, 7,301,671, 7,302,095, 7,302,103, 7,304,753, 7,307,761, 7,342,686, 7,343,438, 7,349,124, 7,365,105, 7,367,060, 7,367,559, 7,389,452, 7,396,119, 7,396,864, 7,397,583, 7,397,961, 7,426,033, 7,427,317, 7,431,436, 7,431,759, 7,433,078, 7,453,596, 7,460,265, 7,460,721, 7,461,377, 7,463,374, 7,466,441, 7,480,070, 7,489,422, 7,495,812, 7,506,253, 7,522,311, 7,522,770, 7,528,974, 7,552,207, 7,552,923, 7,554,687, 7,562,957, 7,564,583, 7,574,545, 7,574,546, 7,579,388, 7,587,336, 7,587,468, 7,598,964, 7,600,867, 7,630,106, 7,636,180, 7,648,293, 7,653,683, 7,662,224, 7,669,096, 7,672,013, 7,673,965, 7,684,085, 7,688,458, 7,688,486, 7,706,015, 7,724,392, 7,729,014, 7,738,147, 7,738,710, 7,742,204, 7,756,346, 7,770,999, 7,791,777, 7,800,773, 7,800,776, 7,812,999, 7,828,412, 7,831,830, 7,849,316, 7,859,689, 7,859,711, 7,859,724, 7,861,156, 7,869,079, 7,880,934, 7,884,962, 7,889,403, 7,889,361, 7,911,432, 7,911,433, 7,919,543, 7,982,890, 7,996,806, 8,013,871, 8,014,036, 8,031,363, 8,100,507, 8,107,122, 8,121,338, 8,133,539, 8,139,256, 8,153,195, 8,162,437, 8,169,630, 8,171,103, 8,172,363, 8,192,010, 8,205,012, 8,243,326, 8,294,925, 8,317,311, 8,322,836, 8,408,676, 8,430,498, 8,459,773, 8,459,778, 8,477,165, 8,484,316, 8,553,286, 8,567,936, 8,595,384, 8,601,605, 8,610,932, 8,616,691, 8,672,451, 8,684,511, 8,730,525, 8,740,367, 8,757,762, 8,777,385, 8,780,152, 8,782,808, 8,807,727, 8,810,876, 8,814,346, 8,833,922, 8,860,998, 8,861,053, 8,882,243, 8,885,181, 8,889,232, 8,922,818, 8,934,119, 8,947,702, 8,960,870, 8,967,777, 8,967,762, 8,976,407, 9,049,403, 9,067,435, 9,079,402, 9,079,427, 9,085,161, 9,126,420, 9,129,193, 9,134,935, 9,137,208, 9,158,479, 9,195,916, 9,227,428, 9,228,104, 9,232,112, 9,233,569, 9,260,616, 9,272,541, 9,294,574, 9,302,490, 9,303,097, 9,321,281, 9,335,157, 9,336,465, 9,336,473, 9,365,061, 9,417,829, 9,420,146, 9,446,990, 9,458,334, 9,487,010, 9,527,307, 9,540,531, RE38,732.

Trademarks

The APPS logo, Auto-Count, Balance, BESTColor, BioVu, BioWare, ColorPASS, Colorproof, ColorWise, Command WorkStation, CopyNet, Cretachrom, Cretaprint, the Cretaprint logo, Cretaprinter, Cretaroller, Digital StoreFront, DirectSmile, DocBuilder, DocBuilder Pro, DockNet, DocStream, DSFdesign Studio, Dynamic Wedge, EDOX, EFI, the EFI logo, Electronics For Imaging, Entrac, EPCount, EPPPhoto, EPRegister, EPStatus, Estimate, ExpressPay, Fabrivu, Fast-4, Fiery, the Fiery logo, Fiery Driven, the Fiery Driven logo, Fiery Link, Fiery Navigator, Fiery Prints, the Fiery Prints logo, Fiery Spark, FreeForm, Hagen, Inkintensity, Inkware, Jetrion, the Jetrion logo, JobFlow, JobMaster, LapNet, Logic, Metrix, MicroPress, MiniNet, Monarch, OneFlow, Pace, Pecas, Pecas Vision, PhotoXposure, PressVu, Printcafe, PrinterSite, PrintFlow, PrintMe, the PrintMe logo, PrintSmith, PrintSmith Site, Printstream, Print to Win, Prograph, PSI, PSI Flexo, Radius, Remoteproof, RIPChips, RIP-While-Print, Screenproof, SecurPrint, SendMe, Sincolor, Splash, Spot-On, TrackNet, UltraPress, UltraTex, UltraVu, UV Series 50, VisualCal, VUTEk, the VUTEk logo, and WebTools are trademarks of Electronics For Imaging, Inc. and/or its wholly owned subsidiaries in the U.S. and/or certain other countries.

Third-Party Notifications

APPLE, INC. ("APPLE") MAKES NO WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, REGARDING THE APPLE SOFTWARE. APPLE DOES NOT WARRANT, GUARANTEE, OR MAKE ANY REPRESENTATIONS REGARDING THE USE OR THE RESULTS OF THE USE OF THE APPLE SOFTWARE IN TERMS OF ITS CORRECTNESS, ACCURACY, RELIABILITY, CURRENTNESS, OR OTHERWISE. THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE RESULTS AND PERFORMANCE OF THE APPLE SOFTWARE IS ASSUMED BY YOU. THE EXCLUSION OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES IS NOT PERMITTED BY SOME STATES. THE ABOVE EXCLUSION MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

IN NO EVENT WILL APPLE, ITS DIRECTORS, OFFICERS, EMPLOYEES OR AGENTS BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL, INCIDENTAL, OR INDIRECT DAMAGES (INCLUDING DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF BUSINESS PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION, LOSS OF BUSINESS INFORMATION, AND THE LIKE) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE APPLE SOFTWARE, EVEN IF APPLE HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. BECAUSE SOME STATES DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF LIABILITY FOR CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES, THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU. Apple's liability to you for actual damages from any cause whatsoever, and regardless of the form of the action (whether in contract, tort [including negligence], product liability, or otherwise), will be limited to \$50.

PANTONE® Colors displayed in the Software or in the documentation may not match PANTONE-identified standards. Consult current PANTONE Color Publications for accurate color. PANTONE® and other Pantone, Inc. trademarks are the property of Pantone, Inc. © Pantone, Inc., 2001.

Pantone, Inc. is the copyright owner of PANTONE color data and/or software. Certified PDF is a registered trademark of Enfocis, patent pending. PitStop Professional, PitStop Extreme, PitStop Server, Instant PDF, StatusCheck, CertifiedPDF.net, Instant Barcode, and PDF Workflow Suite are product names of Enfocis. Enfocis products and the use of Enfocis products are under license from Markzware under U.S. Patent No. 5,963,641. Enfocis is an EskoArtwork Company.

The Software may contain various components which are subject to different licenses, including the EFI modified version of the Linux kernel binary image, certain LGPL libraries, certain other open source libraries and tools, and software developed by the Apache Software Foundation (www.apache.org). By using the Software or any of the incorporated components, you agree to be bound by the terms and conditions of their respective licenses. The respective copyright notices, acknowledgments and licenses can be found on the Fiery WebTools home page. As a reminder, the term "Software" as used in the EFI Software End User License Agreement does not include any open source software that is contained in the product, and the terms of the EFI Software End User License Agreement do not apply to open source software.

Regulatory Notices and Markings

THE FOLLOWING REGULATORY NOTICES AND MARKINGS APPLY IF THE EFI PRODUCT YOU RECEIVED INCLUDES EQUIPMENT.

WARNING: FCC Regulations state that any unauthorized changes or modifications to this equipment not expressly approved by the manufacturer could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

Refer to the Class Compliance sticker affixed to the back of your Fiery (or, in the case of embedded systems, to the sticker affixed to the print engine) to identify the appropriate classification (A or B, below) for this product.

FCC Class A Compliance

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause interference, in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.

Industry Canada Class A Notice

This Class A digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-3(A).

Avis de Conformation Classe A de l'Industrie Canada

Cet appareil numérique de la Classe A est conforme à la norme NMB-3(A) du Canada.

FCC Class B Declaration of Conformity

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation.

If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.

Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.

Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.

Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

In order to maintain compliance with FCC regulations, shielded cables must be used with this equipment. Operation with non-approved equipment or unshielded cables is likely to result in interference to radio and TV reception. The user is cautioned that changes and modifications made to the equipment without the approval of the manufacturer could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

Industry Canada Class B Notice

This Class B digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-3(B).

Avis de Conformation Classe B de l'Industrie Canada

Cet appareil numérique de la Classe B est conforme à la norme NMB-3(B) du Canada.

RFI Compliance Notice

This equipment has been tested concerning compliance with the relevant RFI protection requirements both individually and on a system level (to simulate normal operation conditions). However, it is possible that these RFI Requirements are not met under certain unfavorable conditions in other installations. It is the user who is responsible for compliance of his particular installation.

Dieses Gerät wurde sowohl einzeln als auch in einer Anlage, die einen normalen Anwendungsfall nachbildet, auf die Einhaltung der Funkentstörbestimmungen geprüft. Es ist jedoch möglich, dass die Funkentstörbestimmungen unter ungünstigen Umständen bei anderen Gerätekombinationen nicht eingehalten werden. Für die Einhaltung der Funkentstörbestimmungen einer gesamten Anlage, in der dieses Gerät betrieben wird, ist der Betreiber verantwortlich.

Compliance with applicable regulations depends on the use of shielded cables. It is the user who is responsible for procuring the appropriate cables.

Die Einhaltung zutreffender Bestimmungen hängt davon ab, dass geschirmte Ausführungen benutzt werden.

Für die Beschaffung richtiger Ausführungen ist der Betreiber verantwortlich.

CE Marking (Declaration of Conformity)

This product complies with the following EU directives: 93/68/EEC, 2002/96/EC, and 2006/66/EC. This declaration is valid for the area of the European Union.

EFI SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

PLEASE READ THIS SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT ("LICENSE AGREEMENT") CAREFULLY. THIS LICENSE AGREEMENT IS A LEGAL AGREEMENT BETWEEN YOU AND ELECTRONICS FOR IMAGING, INC. ("EFI") REGARDING THE EFI SOFTWARE ("SOFTWARE"). YOU AGREE THAT THIS AGREEMENT IS LIKE ANY WRITTEN NEGOTIATED AGREEMENT SIGNED BY YOU. BY CLICKING TO ACKNOWLEDGE YOUR AGREEMENT DURING REVIEW OF AN ELECTRONIC VERSION OF THIS LICENSE AGREEMENT OR BY INSTALLING, COPYING OR BY OTHERWISE USING THE SOFTWARE, YOU AGREE TO BE BOUND BY THIS LICENSE AGREEMENT. THIS LICENSE AGREEMENT IS ENFORCEABLE AGAINST YOU AND ANY LEGAL ENTITY (E.G., SYSTEM INTEGRATOR, CONSULTANT OR CONTRACTOR) THAT INSTALLS OR USES THE SOFTWARE ON YOUR BEHALF. IF YOU DO NOT AGREE, DO NOT INSTALL, COPY, OR OTHERWISE USE THE SOFTWARE, AND RETURN THE SOFTWARE TO YOUR PLACE OF PURCHASE FOR A FULL REFUND IN ACCORDANCE WITH ITS REFUND POLICIES.

NOTICE TO PARTIES THAT ACT AS AN AGENT OF AN END USER OR OTHERWISE DO NOT INTEND TO BE END USERS OF THE SOFTWARE: IF YOU CLICK TO ACCEPT AN ELECTRONIC VERSION OF THIS AGREEMENT, OR INSTALL, COPY OR OTHERWISE USE THE SOFTWARE AS AN AGENT ACTING ON BEHALF OF THE INTENDED LICENSEE, THEN YOU WILL BE DEEMED TO BE THE USER OF THE SOFTWARE AND BOUND BY THE TERMS OF THIS AGREEMENT UNLESS YOU (I) DELIVER THE TANGIBLE MEDIA CONTAINING THE SOFTWARE AND THIS LICENSE AGREEMENT TO THE LICENSEE PRIOR TO PROVIDING THE LICENSEE ACCESS TO THE SOFTWARE, AND (II) REMOVE AND DESTROY ANY COPIES OF THE SOFTWARE IN YOUR POSSESSION.

IF YOU HAVE EXECUTED A SEPARATE SIGNED WRITTEN AGREEMENT WITH EFI FOR THE SOFTWARE, IN THE EVENT OF ANY CONFLICTING TERMS AND CONDITIONS BETWEEN SUCH WRITTEN AGREEMENT AND THIS LICENSE AGREEMENT, THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THE WRITTEN AGREEMENT SHALL CONTROL.

License

EFI grants you a limited, non-exclusive license to use the Software solely in accordance with the terms and conditions of this License Agreement, solely as specified in the EFI product documentation, and solely with the product(s) specified in the EFI product documentation ("Product(s)"). Some third-party materials distributed with the Software may be subject to other terms and conditions, which are typically found in a separate license agreement or "Read Me" file located near such third party materials.

The term "Software" as used in this License Agreement shall mean the EFI software (including software provided by third party suppliers) and all documentation, downloads, on-line materials, bug fixes, patches, releases, release notes, updates, upgrades, technical support materials, and information regarding the EFI software. The terms and conditions of this License Agreement shall apply to and govern your use of all such items; however EFI may provide other written terms with an update, release or upgrade.

The Software is licensed, not sold. You may use the Software solely for the purposes described in the EFI product documentation. You may not rent, lease, sublicense, lend, or otherwise distribute the Software or use the Software in any time sharing, service bureau, or similar arrangement. Certain Software may only be installed at a single, physical location and any relocation of such Software will require EFI's written consent.

You may not make or have made, or permit to be made, any copies of the Software or portions thereof, except one (1) backup or archive copy for the purposes permitted in this License Agreement; provided, however, that under no circumstances may you make or have made, or permit to be made, any copies of any portion of the Software that is included on any portion of the controller board or hardware of a product. Any copies of the Software that you are permitted to make pursuant to this Agreement must contain the same copyright and other proprietary notices that appear on or in the Software.

EFI may occasionally verify the number of copies and configurations, and/or the physical location of Software in use by you. Any such verification shall be conducted during normal business hours and in such a manner as not to unreasonably interfere with your normal business activities. In the event such verification discloses an underpayment of fees, you shall promptly pay such underpaid fees to EFI in accordance with EFI's then-current price list. You agree not to localize, translate, disassemble, decompile, decrypt, reverse engineer, unbundle, repackage, discover the source code of, modify, create derivative works of, or in any way change any part of the Software.

As between you and EFI, you assume all risk and are solely responsible for any and all liability resulting from your use of the Software in a way that violates (or that produces content that violates) any law or the rights of others including, without limitation, laws concerning copyright infringement or privacy.

Intellectual Property Rights

You acknowledge and agree that all rights, title, and interest, including all intellectual property rights, in and relating to the Software, all EFI Products, and all copies, modifications, and derivative works thereof, are solely owned by and shall remain with EFI and its suppliers. Except for the express limited license granted in this License Agreement, no right or license of any kind is granted. You receive no rights or license under any patents, copyrights, trade secrets, trademarks (whether registered or unregistered), or other intellectual property. You agree not to adopt, register, or attempt to register any EFI trademark or trade name or any confusingly similar mark, URL, internet domain name, or symbol as your own name or the name of your affiliates or products, and agree not to take any other action which impairs or reduces the trademark rights of EFI or its suppliers.

Excluded License

Notwithstanding anything to the contrary, you are not licensed to (and you agree that you will not) integrate or use the Software in any manner that would cause the Software in whole or in part to become subject to any of the terms of an Excluded License. "Excluded License" means any license that requires as a condition of use, modification and/or distribution of software subject to the Excluded License, that such software or other software combined and/or distributed with such software be (i) disclosed or distributed in source code form; (ii) licensed for the purpose of making derivative works; or (iii) redistributable at no charge.

Updates

If the Software is an upgrade or update to a previous version of the Software, you must possess a valid license to such previous version in order to use such upgrade or update. All upgrades and updates are provided to you on a license exchange basis. You agree that by using an upgrade or update you voluntarily terminate your right to use any previous version of the Software. As an exception, you may continue to use previous versions of the Software after you use the upgrade or update only to assist you in the transition to the upgrade or update, provided that the upgrade or update and the previous versions are installed on the same device. Upgrades and updates may be licensed to you by EFI with additional or different terms.

Confidentiality

The Software, including its structure, organization, and code, constitutes valuable trade secrets and confidential, proprietary information of EFI and its suppliers and you may not distribute or disclose the Software. You may, however, permanently transfer all of your rights under this License Agreement to another person or legal entity provided that: (1) such a transfer is authorized under all applicable export laws and regulations, including the laws and regulations of the United States, including the United States Export Administration Regulations; (2) you transfer to the person or entity all of the Software (including all copies, updates, upgrades, media, printed documentation, and this License Agreement); (3) you retain no copies of the Software, including no backup, archival, or other copies, however stored; and (4) the recipient agrees to all of the terms and conditions of this License Agreement.

Termination

Unauthorized use, copying, or disclosure of the Software, or any breach of this License Agreement will result in automatic termination of this license and will make available to EFI other legal remedies. In the event of termination, you must destroy all copies of the Software and all component parts thereof. All provisions of this License Agreement relating to confidentiality of the Software, disclaimers of warranties, limitation of liability, remedies, damages, governing law, jurisdiction, venue, EFI's intellectual property rights, and Adobe Software shall survive any termination of this license.

If the Software contains a License Key, upon termination, EFI may immediately and without notice, execute the License Key, defined as a programming code, intentionally inserted into the Software, which if executed, renders the Software or portions thereof inoperable. YOU ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT THE SOFTWARE MAY CONTAIN A LICENSE KEY AND THAT EXECUTION OF SUCH LICENSE KEY SHALL RENDER THE SOFTWARE OR A PORTION THEREOF INOPERABLE. YOU FURTHER ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT THE LICENSE KEY IS NOT A VIRUS AND THAT IN THE EVENT THAT THE LICENSE KEY IS EXECUTED DUE TO YOUR BREACH, YOU MAY BE OBLIGATED TO PAY EFI'S THEN CURRENT FEE TO REACTIVATE THE SOFTWARE, PLUS ANY OTHER APPLICABLE FEES, INCLUDING LICENSE FEES.

Limited Warranty and Disclaimer

EFI warrants that the Software, if used as specified in the EFI product documentation, will perform substantially in accordance with the EFI product documentation for a period of ninety (90) days from the date of receipt when used on the recommended operating system, platform, and hardware configuration. All warranty claims must be made, along with proof of purchase, within such ninety (90) day period. EFI makes no warranty or representation that the Software will meet your specific requirements, that the operation of the Software will be uninterrupted, secure, fault-tolerant, or error free, or that all defects in the Software will be corrected. EFI makes no warranty, implied or otherwise, regarding the performance or reliability of any other Products or services or any third party products (software or hardware) or services. THE INSTALLATION OF ANY THIRD PARTY PRODUCTS OTHER THAN AS AUTHORIZED BY EFI WILL VOID THIS WARRANTY. USE, MODIFICATION, AND/OR REPAIR OF THE SOFTWARE OR AN EFI PRODUCT OTHER THAN AS AUTHORIZED BY EFI WILL VOID THIS WARRANTY. FURTHER, THIS LIMITED WARRANTY IS VOID IF A PROBLEM WITH THE SOFTWARE ARISES FROM ACCIDENT, ABUSE, MISAPPLICATION, ABNORMAL USE, VIRUS, WORM, OR SIMILAR CIRCUMSTANCE. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, EXCEPT FOR THE EXPRESS LIMITED WARRANTY SET FORTH ABOVE ("LIMITED WARRANTY"), EFI MAKES AND YOU RECEIVE NO REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES RELATING TO THE SOFTWARE, ANY PRODUCT AND/OR ANY SERVICES, WHETHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED, STATUTORY, OR IN ANY OTHER PROVISION OF THIS AGREEMENT OR ANY OTHER COMMUNICATION. EFI AND ITS SUPPLIERS SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIM ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES, REPRESENTATIONS, AND CONDITIONS, INCLUDING THOSE OF SECURITY, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. THERE IS NO WARRANTY OR REPRESENTATION THAT THE OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE AND/OR ANY PRODUCT WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED, FAULT-TOLERANT, SECURE, OR ERROR-FREE. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, YOUR SOLE AND EXCLUSIVE REMEDY, AND THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF EFI AND ITS SUPPLIERS, RELATING TO ANY AND ALL SOFTWARE, PRODUCTS, SERVICES, AND/OR APPLICABLE WARRANTIES SHALL BE, AT EFI'S OPTION, (1) TO REPAIR OR REPLACE THE SOFTWARE THAT DOES NOT MEET THE LIMITED WARRANTY; OR (2) PROVIDE A REFUND OF THE PRICE PAID (IF ANY) FOR THE SOFTWARE THAT DOES NOT MEET THE LIMITED WARRANTY. EXCEPT AS PROVIDED IN THIS SECTION, EFI AND ITS SUPPLIERS SHALL PROVIDE NO REFUNDS, RETURNS, EXCHANGES, OR REPLACEMENTS.

Limitation of Liability

TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, YOU AGREE THAT THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF EFI AND ITS SUPPLIERS FOR ALL CLAIMS RELATED TO ANY SOFTWARE, PRODUCT, SERVICES, AND/OR THIS LICENSE AGREEMENT, REGARDLESS OF THE FORM OF ACTION (WHETHER IN CONTRACT, TORT, UNDER STATUTE, OR OTHERWISE), SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT PAID BY YOU, IF ANY, FOR THE EFI SOFTWARE. YOU AGREE THAT SUCH AMOUNT IS SUFFICIENT TO SATISFY THE ESSENTIAL PURPOSE OF THIS LICENSE AGREEMENT AND THAT SUCH A LIABILITY IS A FAIR AND REASONABLE ESTIMATE OF ANY LOSS AND DAMAGE LIKELY TO BE SUFFERED IN THE EVENT OF ANY WRONGFUL ACT OR OMISSION BY EFI AND/OR ITS SUPPLIERS. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, IN NO EVENT SHALL EFI AND ITS SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE FOR COST OF PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE SOFTWARE, PRODUCTS OR SERVICES, LOST PROFITS OR DATA, THIRD PARTY CLAIMS, OR ANY SPECIAL, INDIRECT, RELIANCE, CONSEQUENTIAL, EXEMPLARY, PUNITIVE, OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES, HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, RELATED TO ANY SOFTWARE, PRODUCT, SERVICES AND/ OR THIS LICENSE AGREEMENT. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF EFI AND ITS SUPPLIERS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. YOU AGREE THAT THE PRICE OF THE EFI SOFTWARE REFLECTS THIS ALLOCATION OF RISK. YOU ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT THE FOREGOING LIMITATIONS OF LIABILITY AND DISCLAIMERS FORM AN ESSENTIAL ELEMENT OF THIS LICENSE AGREEMENT, WITHOUT WHICH EFI WOULD NOT HAVE LICENSED THE EFI SOFTWARE TO YOU. BECAUSE SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW SOME OR ALL OF THE EXCLUSIONS AND/OR LIMITATIONS OF LIABILITY HEREIN, SOME OR ALL OF THE ABOVE EXCLUSIONS AND LIMITATIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

Export Restrictions

The Software and EFI Products are subject to the export laws and regulations of the United States, including the United States Export Administration Regulations. The license granted to you herein is conditioned upon your compliance with all applicable export laws and regulations, including the export laws and regulations of the United States. You represent and agree that you will not use, disclose, distribute, transfer, export, or re-export any portion of the Software or any EFI Product in any form in violation of any applicable export laws and regulations, including the export laws and regulations of the United States. In addition, if the Software is identified as an export controlled item under the applicable export laws and regulations, you represent and warrant that you are not a citizen of, or located within, an embargoed or otherwise restricted nation and that you are not otherwise prohibited under such laws and regulations from receiving the Software.

Consent to Use of Data

You agree that EFI may collect and use anonymously aggregated technical information gathered in any manner as part of product support services related to the Software. Subject to EFI's then-current privacy policy and applicable laws and regulations, EFI may: (i) use this information to improve its products or to provide customized services or technologies to you; (ii) transfer this information to its affiliates, agents, and partners; and (iii) transfer this information to the United States and/or any other country where EFI and its affiliates, agents, and partners maintain facilities.

Adobe Software

The Software may contain the following Adobe Systems Incorporated ("Adobe") materials: (a) software included as part of the printing system, including PostScript® software, Font Programs (digitally-encoded machine-readable outline data encoded in special format and in encrypted form used to produce various typefaces) and other Adobe software (collectively, "Printing Software"), and (b) other software which runs on a computer system for use in conjunction with the Printing Software ("Host Software"). The following terms are applicable to the materials provided by Adobe:

1. **Printing Software.** You may use the Printing Software (in object code form only) (i) on a single output device that contains an embedded controller; OR (ii) for Printing Software residing on a host computer, on up to the authorized number of central processing units ("CPUs") for which you are licensed, for imaging to the licensed output device(s), solely for your own internal business purposes. You may not change the name of any driver software file or driver software icon without consent of EFI. You may use Roman character Font Programs and Adobe Type Manager® to reproduce weights, styles, and versions of letters, numerals, characters and symbols ("Typefaces") on up to five (5) computers for use with the Printing Software.

2. **Host Software.** You may install the Host Software in a single location on a hard disk or other storage device on one (or the authorized number of) computer(s) for which you are licensed ("Permitted No. of Computers"), and, provided that the Host Software is configured for network use, install and use the Host Software on a single file server for use on a single local area network for either (but not both) of the following purposes: (i) permanent installation onto a hard disk or other storage device on the Permitted No. of Computers; or (ii) use of the Host Software over such network, provided the use of the Host Software does not exceed the Permitted No. of Computers. You may make one backup copy of the Host Software (which shall not be installed or used).

You are hereby notified that Adobe Systems Incorporated, a Delaware corporation located at 345 Park Avenue, San Jose, CA 95110-2704 ("Adobe") is a third-party beneficiary to this License Agreement to the extent that this License Agreement contains provisions which relate to your use of any software, font programs, typefaces, and/or trademarks licensed or supplied by Adobe. Such provisions are made expressly for the benefit of Adobe and are enforceable by Adobe in addition to EFI. ADOBE WILL HAVE NO LIABILITY WHATSOEVER TO YOU FOR ANY ADOBE SOFTWARE OR TECHNOLOGY LICENSED HEREUNDER.

Oracle Software

The Software may contain the software and/or materials provided by Oracle Corporation ("Oracle"). Java and all Java-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates.

U.S. Government Restricted Rights

Use, duplication, or disclosure of the Software by the United States Government is subject to restrictions as set forth in FAR 12.212 or DFARS 227.7202-3 - 227.7202-4 and, to the extent required under U.S. federal law, the minimum restricted rights as set out in FAR 52.227-14, Restricted Rights Notice (June 1987) Alternate III(g)(3) (June 1987) or FAR 52.227-19 (June 1987). To the extent any technical data is provided pursuant to the Agreement, such data is protected per FAR 12.211 and DFARS 227.7102-2 and to the extent explicitly required by the U.S. Government, is subject to limited rights as set out in DFARS 252.227.7015 (November 1995) and DFARS 252.227-7037 (September 1999). In the event that any of the above referenced agency regulations are modified or superseded, the subsequent equivalent regulation shall apply. The name of the Contractor is Electronics For Imaging, Inc.

Governing Law and Jurisdiction

The rights and obligations of the parties related to this License Agreement will be governed in all respects by the laws of the State of California exclusively, as such laws apply to contracts between California residents performed entirely within California. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods and any other similar convention does not apply to this License Agreement. For all disputes related to the Software, Products, services, and/or this License Agreement, you consent to the exclusive personal jurisdiction and venue of the state courts in San Mateo County, California and the federal court for the Northern District of California.

General

This Agreement is the entire agreement held between us and supersedes any other communications or advertising with respect to the Software, Products, Services, and any other subject matter covered by this License Agreement. If any provision of the License Agreement is held invalid, such provision shall be deemed modified to the extent necessary to be enforceable and the other provisions in this License Agreement shall continue in full force and effect.

If you have any questions, see the EFI web site at www.efi.com.

Electronics For Imaging, Inc.

6750 Dumbarton Circle

Fremont, CA 94555

USA

Copyright © 2004-2017 Electronics For Imaging, Inc. All rights reserved.

45166696

1 January 2017